





# TECDIS USER MANUAL VER 3.23b ENGLISH

This blank page is automatically inserted where appropriate to ensure that new Chapters begin on a recto page.

# **Table of contents**

Introduction	17
Navigating the user manual	17
Textboxes	17
Help and support	18
Reservations	19
Compliance with Current Standards	20
Version 4.7.1 and higher:	20
Version 4.6.0 to 4.7.0:	
Chapter 1:TECDIS at a glance	21
1.1:The ECDIS system	23
1.2:Charts at a glance	
1.2.1:About Chart Databases and Simplified ENC Distribution	
1.3:Positions / Chart Datum	27
Chapter 2:The basics	29
2.1:Keyboard and trackball/mouse	
2.1.1:Trackball/mouse	31
2.1.2:Keyboard	31
2.1.3:Other peripherals	33
2.2:Navigating menus and tools	34
2.2.1:Chart panning	
2.2.2:Zooming in the chart	34
2.2.3:Set chart center	34
2.2.4:Activating functions/tools	34
2.2.5:Dropdown menus	35
2.2.6:Popup windows	35
2.3:The TECDIS screen	36
2.3.1:Parts of the screen	
2.3.2:Own vessel position	
2.3.3:Screen light setting: Day - dusk - night	

2.3.4:The information panel	
2.3.4.1:Expanded sensor information	
2.3.5:The main toolbar	
Chapter 3:The chart view	41
3.1:Moving around in the chart	
3.1.1:Chart panning	
3.1.2:Set chart center - visually	43
3.1.3:Set chart center - enter position	
3.2:Automatic Chart Centering	45
3.3:Chart scale	
3.3.1:Chart zooming - automatic scaling	46
3.3.2:Chart zooming with manual scaling	47
3.3.3:Automatic zooming during route sailing	
3.3.4:Zooming without changing chart scale	
3.3.5:NB! Overscale and underscale	
3.4:Chart symbols - IHO Presentation library	
3.5:Chart presentation	
3.5.1:Standard presentation mode (STD)	50
3.5.2:User defined presentation mode (USER)	50
3.5.3:Full hazards display	
3.5.3.1:Full safe hazards on anti grounding alarms	
3.5.3.2:Danger symbol	52
3.6:Chart symbols - own objects	53
3.6.1:MOB symbol / eventmarker	53
3.6.2:Opening the symbol menu	53
3.6.2.1:Selecting and displaying objects (symbol, line and area)	54
3.6.3:Add new, modify or delete symbol (objects)	55
3.6.4:Add new, modify or delete custom lines / areas	57
3.7:Chart orientation	
Chapter 4:Navigation	60
4.1:Route planning	63

4.1.1:An introduction	63
4.1.2:Starting the route planning tool	64
4.1.3:Draw a route directly in the charts	65
4.1.3.1:How to change the chart view during route drawing	66
4.1.3.2:How to separate a new route from existing routes in the chart view.	66
4.1.3.3:Route check	67
4.1.4:Activating the selected route	68
4.1.5:Automatic route generation with Jeppesen C-Routes	69
4.1.5.1:About C-Routes	69
4.1.5.2:Start C-Routes	70
4.1.5.3:Route name	70
4.1.5.4:Enter a new stop for the voyage	70
4.1.5.5:Port-of-call list	70
4.1.5.6:Restrictions - add and delete	71
4.1.5.7:Restrictions - options	72
4.1.5.8:Create Port-of-call list with the on-screen keyboard	73
4.1.5.9:Create the route	73
4.1.6:Search and Rescue - SAR	73
4.1.6.1:Special conditions for the QRS pattern type	74
4.1.7:Primary and secondary routes	75
4.1.7.1:Transfer of primary and secondary routes to another TECDIS unit.	75
4.1.8:Route organizer	75
4.1.8.1:Route selector and route search	76
4.1.8.2:Exporting routes	77
4.1.8.3:Importing routes	77
4.1.9:Delete selected route	77
4.1.10:Voyage planner	79
4.1.10.1:Changing values in the waypoint list - Default values	80
4.1.10.2:Changing values in the waypoint list - single waypoint	80
4.1.10.3:Edit waypoint/route information	80
4.1.10.4:ETA - calculation during route planning	81

4.1.11:Saving and exporting a route list	82
4.1.12:Extending a route	82
4.1.13:Modify waypoints directly in the charts	83
4.1.14:Merge routes	
4.1.14.1:Save the new merged route	84
4.1.15:Copy selected route	
4.1.16:Great circle route	85
4.1.17:Add index lines	86
4.1.17.1:Change index line length	87
4.1.17.2:Deleting and restoring index lines	
4.1.18:Display sight lines	
4.2:Route navigation	
4.2.1:Navigation information	
4.2.2:Larger CTS values	
4.2.3:Route name text field	
4.2.4:Calculation of the voyage duration	
4.2.5:Primary and secondary routes	90
4.2.6:Notify Waypoint / Critical Point on the voyage	90
4.2.7:Hazards and alerts on a route	91
4.3:EBL/VRM Bearing	
4.3.1:Bearing functions	
4.3.2:General about EBL / VRM operation	
4.3.3:Temporary/quick route - route with route monitoring in three clicks.	94
4.3.4:Storage and export of Bearing Position and of Line Of Position (LOP)	95
4.4:Anti grounding	97
4.5:Notifications and alarms	
4.5.1:Confirm alarms and warnings	
4.5.2:Alarm list	
4.5.3:Alarm texts	
4.5.4:Warning text	
4.5.5:Text messages	

4.6:Past track lines	
4.6.1:Primary position source	
4.6.2:Secondary position source	
4.6.3:Convert past track to route	
4.6.4:Show and Hide buttons	
4.7:Maritime calculations	
4.7.1:Calculate	
4.7.1.1:Setting calculating position to chart center	
4.7.1.2:Set a great circle route	
4.7.1.3:Calculation of time	
4.7.1.4:Datum	
4.7.2:Lines of Position (LOP)	
4.7.2.1:Register observations	
4.7.2.2:Features of the LOP tab	
Chapter 5:Other functions	
5.1:Query cursor	
5.1.1:The chart inspector window	
5.1.2:Inspecting past tracks, routes, own symbols, etc.	
5.2:Conning and anchor-watch	
5.2.1:Conning display for mooring	
5.2.2:Conning Anchorguard	119
5.3:ARPA and radar targets	
5.4:AIS - operation	
5.4.1:Displaying AIS information from other vessels	
5.4.2:Displaying AIS information from own vessel	
5.4.3:AIS Broadcast messages	
5.4.4:AIS direct messaging to selected vessel	
5.4.5:AIS target list	
5.4.5.1:Static mode	
5.5:AIS - vessel monitoring	
5.6:Tidal information	

5.6.1:Tides	
5.6.2:Tidal current	
5.6.3:Tidal forecast points for ebb and flow	
5.7:Dead Reckoning Mode	
5.8:NAVTEX	
5.8.1:Message types	
5.8.2:Radio channels	
5.8.3:Older messages	
5.8.4:Show messages	
Chapter 6:Chart installation and maintenance	
6.1:Installing chart databases	
6.1.1:Quick installation with Jeppesen SENC charts	
6.1.2:Quick installation with Navtor Navstick	
6.1.3:Quick installation with Neptune from Nautisk Forlag	
6.1.4:Create the User Permit file	142
6.1.4.1:View your User Permit	
6.1.5:Standard chart installation with S63 Chart Loader	144
6.1.5.1:Adding Cell Permits	144
6.1.5.2:Deleting Cell Permits	
6.1.5.3:Adding S63 charts	146
6.1.5.4:Review of the chart loading log	
6.1.5.5:Considering authenticity information	
6.2:Updating chart databases	
6.2.1:Updating charts - Jeppesen SENC	
6.2.2:Updating charts - S63 Chart Loader	
6.3:Chart corrections	
6.3.1:T&P for charts from Jeppesen	
6.3.2:AIO for AVCS charts	
6.3.2.1:Loading AIO	
6.3.2.2:Remove AIO notices	
6.3.2.3:AIO: types and display	

6.3.2.4:Review AIO information using AIO viewer	
AIO object list	
Query chart	
Detailed view	
AIO Status	
6.3.2.5:AIO Options panel	
6.3.3:Manual chart corrections	
6.3.3.1:Display of manual chart corrections in the chart view	
6.3.3.2:Enter manual chart corrections	
6.3.3.3:Change the correction	
6.3.3.4:Delete chart corrections	
6.3.4:Update log	
6.4:Delete chart databases	
6.5:Chart Licenses	
6.5.1:View your chart licenses in the TECDIS program.	
6.5.2:Chart licenses - Jeppesen SENC	172
6.5.2.1:Adding a chart license	
6.5.2.2:Administrating the chart licenses	
6.5.3:Certificate for chart providers	
6.5.4:Dynamic Licensing	
6.5.4.1:Credit Limit	
6.5.4.2:Automatic Licensing	
6.5.4.3:Reporting user	
6.5.4.4:Billing	
6.5.4.5:Use of Dynamic Licensing in TECDIS	
6.5.4.6:Adjustment for automatic ENC licensing	
6.5.4.7:Route Planning using ENC diagrams	
6.6:IHO Chart library	179
6.6.1:Importing S57 data	
6.6.2:Delete S57 chart databases	
Chapter 7:System settings	

7.1:Settings menu	
7.2:The Setup menu	
7.2.1:Ship draught	
7.2.2:Language	
7.2.3:Time zone adjustment	
7.2.4:NMEA input status	
7.2.5:Navigation position offset	
7.2.6:Chart utilities	
7.2.6.1:INT-1 Dictionary	
7.2.6.2:Radar overlay setup	
7.2.7:Installed Charts on the computer	
7.2.8:Alarm volume	
7.2.9:Auxilary	
7.2.9.1:F1 and F2 key settings	
7.3:The Chart menu	
7.3.1:Chart information	
7.3.2:Selectable layers	
7.3.3:Chart presentation	
7.3.4:Overview of available chart information	
7.3.5:Chart data information	
7.4:The Ship menu	
7.4.1:Ship symbol offcenter	
7.4.2:Auto sensitivity	
7.4.3:Viewing the double circle	
7.4.4:View vessel contour	
7.4.5:Course vector	
7.4.6:ROT curved	
7.4.7:Auto route activation	
7.4.8:Wheelover	
7.5:The Data menu	
7.5.1:Function	

7.5.2:Restrict selection - time/area	
7.5.3:Restrict selection - data type	
7.5.4:Execute	
7.5.5:Importing primary and secondary routes	
7.5.6:Route synchronisation	
7.5.6.1:Manual route synchronisation	
7.5.6.2:Automatic route synchronisation	201
Activate automatic replication	
Disable Automatic Route Replication	
7.6:The Log menu	
7.6.1:Log text	
7.6.2:Visual Replay	
7.6.3:AIS ship data	
7.6.4:Delete Old Log Data	
7.6.5:Screenshots	
7.7:The Safe menu	
7.7.1:Safe, Deep and Shallow	
7.7.2:Check time and angle (anti grounding parameters)	
7.7.3:Auto Safe Hazard display setting	
7.7.4:Camera control (formerly FLIR)	
7.7.5:Alarm	
7.8:The AIS menu	
7.8.1:Display filter	
7.8.2:Lost active targets	
7.8.3:Danger CPA all Targets	
7.9:Monitor calibration	
7.9.1:Controlling the monitor contrast	212
7.9.2:Check the colours	213
Appendix A:TECDIS Setup	
A.1TECDIS Setup at a glance	
A.2Service mode	

A.2.1Entering service mode during system startup	218
A.2.2Entering service mode when TECDIS is running.	
A.3NMEA Data	219
A.3.1NMEA Input	219
A.3.1.1:Info text	
A.3.1.2:NMEA sentence	
A.3.1.3:Input port	
IP ports	221
A.3.1.4:The Baud/TPA field	221
A.3.1.5:Serial port activity	
A.3.1.6:Received data on selected port	222
A.3.1.7:Other COM port connections	
A.3.1.8:COM-port for Monitor ctrl	223
A.3.1.9:COM-port for Alarm ctrl	
A.3.1.10:COM-port for Furuno Keyboard (RCU-018)	223
A.3.1.11:COM-port for CAM control	
A.3.2NMEA Output	224
A.3.2.1:Enabling IP server	224
A.3.3Supported NMEA sentences	225
A.4Vessel settings (Specification)	227
A.4.1More about restoring saved default values	230
A.4.2More about T-setup/TSZ files	231
A.5Chart installation/ Misc	
A.5.1More about Monitor Calibration	233
A.6Licences	235
A.6.1System licenses (TELcahrt License)	235
A.6.1.1:Activating add-ons	236
A.6.2Jeppesen licenses (C-Map License)	236
A.6.2.1:Add license manually	
A.6.2.2:Get Expired licenses	237
A.6.2.3:License list	237

A.6.2.4:Add license from file	237
A.6.2.5:License orde	
A.7Track Control - Settings	
A.7.1The autopilot field	239
A.7.2The Starting Requirements field	240
A.7.3The Default values new route field	240
A.7.4Other settings	240
Appendix B:Optional add-ons	
B.1Weather overlay	246
B.1.1How to enable weather overlay	247
7.9.2.1:Activating the license	247
B.1.1.1:Activate Weather Service subscription	247
B.1.2How to download the Weather Service subscription	
B.1.2.1:Download procedure	248
B.1.3Control of weather subscription licenses	
B.1.4Downloading a new weather forecast	251
B.1.4.1:About weather models	
B.1.4.2:Download Window	
B.1.5Controlling the Weather overlay on the chart	253
B.1.5.1:Time management field	
B.1.5.2:Display Controllers	
B.1.6Custom Views	255
B.1.6.1:Ending a custom view	
B.1.7Cursor info	
B.1.8Explanations of weather data chart symbols	256
B.1.9Selection of units for wind speed, temperature, etc.	257
B.1.10Treatment of downloaded weather forecasts	258
B.1.11Alarm Settings	259
B.1.12Set the alarm settings	259
B.1.13About alarm conditions	
B.1.14The timeline feature	

B.2Radar overlay	
B.2.1Radar overlay correction	
B.2.2Radar display slider control	
B.3Piracy Information	
B.3.1Activation of Pirate option	
B.3.2Turn on display	
B.3.3Adjust the viewing of piracy data	
Time Period	
Incident types	
B.4Autopilot (Track control)	
B.4.1Autopilot mode	
B.4.2Sensor surveillance and error tolerance	
B.4.3TECDIS TCS operation	
B.4.4Activating Heading Control mode	
B.4.5Activating Track Control mode	
B.4.6External (Remote) mode	
B.5TECDIS keypad	
B.5.1The layout	
B.5.2Keys	275
B.5.3Alarm functionality	
B.5.4Navigating your TECDIS with the keypad	
B.5.5Numeric mode	
B.5.5.1:Alternative numerical functions	
B.5.6User defined keys	279
B.5.7Video switching	
B.6Furuno RCU-018	
Appendix C:Frequently asked questions	
C.1Why isn't my route activated?	
C.2The quickest way to make a route - quick route	
C.3How do I keep my TECDIS units up to date	
C.4How do I turn on T&P and AIO	

C.4.1ENC-integrated T&P notices	
C.4.2Jeppesen T&P	
C.4.3Admiralty Information Overlay - AIO	
C.4.4Manual chart corrections	
C.5How do I activate Tides	
C.6How to transfer system configuration	
Appendix D:Troubleshooting	
D.1Trobleshooting - general	
D.2Troubleshooting - connection issues	
D.2.1General tests	
D.2.2Connection tests for internet	
D.2.3Connection tests for email	
D.3Troubleshooting - S63 Chart Loader	
D.4Troubleshooting - Weather overlay	
D.4.1Connection errors	
D.4.2Error messages	

This blank page is automatically inserted where appropriate to ensure that new Chapters begin on a recto page.

# Introduction

This user manual is intended to give you a basis for using the vessels TECDIS-unit in accordance with good maritime navigation customs and the governing rules and regulations.

We recomment that all users of TECDIS attend an IMO-approved ECDIS course for use of the software. For more information about TECDIS type-specific training and ECDIS-training in general, please contact Furuno Norway.

# Navigating the user manual

The user manual is divided into:

- A main section with 8 chapters explaining the different functions and menu choices TECDIShas
- 4 appendixes that outline different use-scenarios, optional add-on functionality and the TECDIS Setup software.

### Textboxes

This user manual uses two textboxes for special information:

NOTE: The red box gives important information/alerts on correct use

TIP: The blue box gives tips and advice for advanced use

# Help and support

To find out more on how to use your TECDIS you can:

- contact your local Furuno Norway dealer
- contact Furuno Norway directly
- download the latest version of the TECDIS documentation on our (Telko AS) website: <u>http://telko.no/site/Support/TECDIS</u>

An overview of Furuno Norway's dealer network can be found on the following website: <u>http://www.furuno.no/en/index.php/forhandlere</u>

An overview of the employees at Furuno Norway and their contact information can be found on the following website: <u>http://www.</u>-<u>furuno.no/en/index.php/kontakt</u>

# Reservations

The TECDIS -system and its navigational aid software, including electronic chart display and automatic navigation and track control system, is an aid in safe maritime navigation.

All such maritime navigation aids are subject to certain inaccuracies and deviations that, if used carelessly, can result in maritime accidents or events, which could be followed by the loss of lives, vessels and cargo, and by environmental damage.

Hence the navigator should not account solely on one single navigation aid (including the TECDISsystem) for safe navigating of the vessel.

The sensible navigator will collect navigation information from several sources, crosschecking all information for any possible flaws or deviations, when deciding the vessel position, course, speed and planned route.

# **Compliance with Current Standards**

TECDIS comply with the following standards or other normative documents:

### Version 4.7.1 and higher:

- Marine Equipment Directive, Module B (MED-B)
- IMO Resolution MSC.232(82)
- IMO Resolution MSC.191(79)
- IMO Resolution MSC.74(69) Annex 2
- IMO Resolution A.694(17)

### Version 4.6.0 to 4.7.0:

- Marine Equipment Directive, Module B (MED-B)
- IMO Resolution MSC.74(69) Annex 2
- IMO Resolution A.817(19) as amended by MSC.64(67) Annex 5 and by MSC.86/70) Annex 4
- IMO Resolution A.694(17)

For a current list of software versions, compliance with standards and instructions for updating TECDIS software, to comply with new standards and regulations, refer to the following web page:

http://www.telko.no/site/support/tecdis/compliance



# **TECDIS** at a glance

In this chapter you will get an insight in what electronic chart systems and ECDIS is, and what a TECDIS system is.

In short TECDIS is a certified electronic chart- and navigationsystem; ECDIS (Electronic Chart and Display Information System) for navigation, voyage planning and voyage monitoring.

TECDIS is certified by the ECDIS standard as specified by IMO and the SOLAS convention. The installation of the TECDIS system can be configured for paperless sailing.

Flagstates and vessel classes have different requirements for backup solutions for paperless sailing. Check the requirements for your vessel by the flag state or vessel class before configuring your TECDIS for paperless sailing. Vessels registrered in Norway can contact Sjøfartsdirektoratet - the Norwegian Maritime Authority.

# **1.1:** The ECDIS system



TECDIS is designed and developed in accordance with IMO specifications and emphasizes on simple and user-friendly operations without compromising the functional requirements.

TECDIS is based on computer units that are approved for maritime use and tailored to meet the requirements of the ECDIS standards.

TECDIS collects information from instruments and sensors for:

- Position
- course
- Speed
- Depth
- Wind
- AIS
- Radar etc. (ARPA, EBL, ROT)

Position and information both for the own vessel and other vessels appear on officially approved charts [Electronic Navigation Chart (ENC)]

Scheduled Voyage Route is displayed and checked for depth and other hazards.

The voyage is monitored by:

- controlling position in relation to the Route Plan
- controlling safe passage
- controlling collision dangers

TECDIS offers several advanced features, such as:

- Dynamic licensing of ENC charts (pay-per-view)
- Detailed weather overlay with customizable display and integration with the voyage planner
- C-routes Automatic generation of routes between a multitude of positions and harbours.
- Powerful voyage planning tool, with both primary and secondary routes
- Automatic antigrounding system with safety contour and safe depth settings that are both adjustable by the navigator
- Tight integration with AIS and ARPA radar
- Advanced sensor filters
- Flexible saving of routes, tracks, symbols, objects and log-files
- User friendly, customizable and feature-rich alarm system
- Highly adjustable chart presentation
- Custom made conning and docking modules
- Automatic storage of all navigational data for playback at a later time
- Radar overlay with Furuno radars
- Track Control with adaptive autopilot

# **1.2:** Charts at a glance

TECDIS is using chart data from multiple vector map databases simultaneously and seamlessly. Typically it is using CM93/3-format, provided by Jeppesen (C-MAP) of a Professional + (World) chart as basis, as it provides global coverage of all relevant scales.

Officially approved charts (ENC) is a requirement for ECDIS when paper charts are not used. These charts are available in two ways; Either precompiled in the Jeppesen (C-MAP) SENC format (*System ENC*), or in uncompiled s57 standard format ENC which can be loaded and compiled through the S63 Chart Loader software.

S57 og S63 charts are identical, however the S63 charts are encrypted.

To use ECDIS as a legal substitute for paper charts, two conditions have to be met:

1: The system must show the official ENC (Electronic Navigation Chart), issued by a national hydrographic authority. (for Norway: Primar)

2: These charts have to be updated regularly.

TECDIS automatically displays the best available charts. Jeppesen C-MAP ENC (SENC) is preferred and is shown where it is available, otherwise charts from Jeppesen C-MAP Professional+ (CM-93/3) are used.

Important: The TECDIS program will from version 4.7.x.18 start even if no chart database is installed/selected. This allows database synchronization with TELKO Synchronizer. TECDIS is not an approved navigation tool for paperless sailing when no chart databases are selected or installed!

# **1.2.1:** About Chart Databases and Simplified ENC Distribution

ENC data (S-57 format) is not used directly in the ECDIS system. ENC files are compiled into a seamless database [System ENC (SENC)] that contains all the required ENCs and are optimized for operational use on board.

All charts displayed in TECDIS are saved in C-MAP SENC (System Electronic Navigational Chart) format. The charts can either be received in this format from the supplier, or it can be generated from other formats such as S-63.

Distribution of ENC in SENC -format has been approved under CHRIS meeting in Athens in April 2002. A number of hydrographic organizations (HO) admits that it facilitates access to official digital cartography, and that it has no negative effect on compliance (accordance) with IMO.

C-MAP provides official data in SENC format in accordance with the "IHO amendment two paragraph 3.3 of S-52" and a new "Technical Resolution A3.11", adopted by the IHO's 16th International Hydrographic Conference. C-MAP CM-93/3 SENC distribution system was also type approved by the Norwegian VERITAS (DNV) in March 2003, as required by the IHO. The distribution system includes Real Time Updating infrastructure that allows users of this system to download chart corrections directly online.

ENC data, from states / countries that still have not approved the distribution of data in the SENC format, are distributed in the S-63 format and converted on board.

# **1.3: Positions / Chart Datum**

The Chart Datum is a mathematical model used by the chart producer to adapt the earth's surface curvature.

In the TECDIS system, position reference, always use the datum with references to the "World Geodetic System 1984" (WGS84). This format is considered the most accurate chart datum available. All charts and chart objects in TECDIS are shown in the "World Geodetic System 1984" (WGS-84) and all the inputs for position data to TECDIS (GPS) must use this datum.

Any translation (recalculation) can easily be made with tools for "Maritime calculations"

All sensor inputs with position references must use the WGS-84 format.

This blank page is automatically inserted where appropriate to ensure that new Chapters begin on a recto page.



# The basics

In this chapter we will give you the basics of how TECDIS is used, in the following sub-chapters:

2.1:Keyboard and trackball/mouse	31
2.1.1:Trackball/mouse	
2.1.2:Keyboard	31
2.1.3:Other peripherals	33
2.2:Navigating menus and tools	34
2.2.1:Chart panning	34
2.2.2:Zooming in the chart	34
2.2.3:Set chart center	
2.2.4:Activating functions/tools	34
2.2.5:Dropdown menus	
2.2.6:Popup windows	35
2.3:The TECDIS screen	
2.3.1:Parts of the screen	
2.3.2:Own vessel position	
2.3.3:Screen light setting: Day - dusk - night	
2.3.4:The information panel	
2.3.5:The main toolbar	40

#### Helptext:

If you do not already know how to use your TECDIS, enabling the "helptext" feature is a useful tip. By moving the pointer over any toolbutton or parameter value, the system will show an explanatory text on a yellow base.



# 2.1: Keyboard and trackball/mouse

TECDIS can be operated with both keyboard and trackball/mouse. For most functions you can select which peripheral to use yourself.

# 2.1.1: Trackball/mouse

All functions and operations can be controlled by moving the pointer across the monitor with the trackball/maouse, and using the right and left mouse buttons to call to action. Functions can be activated and deactivated, and the chart can be panned and zoomed.

- 1. The left mouse button is used to operate primary functionality for all tools, functions and icons. In addition you zoom inwards in the chart with this button, centred on the point you have placed the pointer.
- 2. The right mouse button is used to operate secondary functionality for all tools, functions and icons, in addition to zooming outwards in the chart.
- 3. The centre mouse button, alternatively the scroll wheel, centres the chart at the point where the pointer is placed.

If you have a trackball with a scroll wheel as the middle button, you can configure TECDIS to zoom by scrolling the wheel. See *7.2: The Setup menu* (see page 186).

## 2.1.2: Keyboard

The keyboard that is supplied with TECDIS is pre-configured with combination commands for the most important functions. In addition a digital keyboard will appear on-screen, and this is operated by the mouse and pointer when keyboard input is needed. The combination commands are as follows:

- F1: Info on chart functions
- F2: Chart query by cursor
- F3: Name search (add-on)
- F4: Chart Legend
- F5: Settings menu
- F6: Route menu

F7: Mariner symbol object menu

**F8:** Mariner line/area object menu

F9: Timestamp past track

**F10**: Man over board (MOB)

F11: Own ship position fix

F12: Event mark

**1.** Screen day/night colours

2. Display orientation

3. STD S52 AUTO presentation

**4.** "USER" presentation

5. Conning display

6. Værdisplay (opsjon)

7. Radaroverlay (opsjon)

8. EBL/VRM functions

**9.** ARPA

**0.** AIS

W-A-B-C-D-E-F-G: Kartnivåer

S: simulated position and DR Arrow keys: Move chart Page Up: Zoom out at selected level Page Down: Zoom in at selected level - : Zoom out auto level Ins: Move cursor/chart to a position Del: S52 chart presentation + auto-positioning Enter: Left mouse key at cursor position / or <: Darker screen colours \* or >: Brighter screen colours Esc/space: Alarm off (list/sequential) Ctrl +PrtScr: Save present screenshot Ctrl+ Alt +Shift + T: Monitor calibration test

## 2.1.3: Other peripherals

TECDIS can be equipped with alternative keyboards and trackballs. Contact your local Furuno Norway dealer or Furuno Norway for more information and purchase.

In addition you can expand the functionality by using custom keyboards/keypads:

TECDIS has two available custom keyboards:

- *The Furuno RCU-018* keyboard, with the same layout as Furunos radar keyboards.
- TECDIS Keypad, a 21-digit fast access keypad custom made for TECDIS, that can be mounted in the TECDIS-console or on the arm-rest for easy access to the most important features.

More information about Furuno RCU-018 and TECDIS Keypad can be found in appendix B.

# 2.2: Navigating menus and tools

TECDIS has icon based tools, and all user-controlled settings are placed in menu tabs. Below is a description of how to navigate your TECDIS.

## 2.2.1: Chart panning

When you move the cursor to one of the edges of the chart view, it will change shape to a directional arrow, and by left clicking the mouse you will move the chart view in the arrow's direction.

Alternatively you can pan the chart with the arrow keys on your keyboard.

If you move the pointer to a corner in the chart view, you will be able to pan diagonally in the chart.

## 2.2.2: Zooming in the chart

To zoom into the chart, you place the pointer where you want the centrepoint of the new chart display to be, and click on the left trackball button.

To zoom out from the current chart display, click on the right trackball button. The new chart display will centre around the point where the mouse-pointer was.

### 2.2.3: Set chart center

To move a point in the chart view to the centre of the chart view, you move the pointer to that point and click the middle mouse button.

## 2.2.4: Activating functions/tools

Activating tools and functions in TECDIS is done by moving the pointer to the icon of that function/tool, and left-clicking. Ved å venstreklikke starter du funksjonen. Some icons have secondary functionality; this functionality is accessed by right-clicking the icon

Both the primary and secondary function associated with an icon is displayed in the help-text that appears when you let the pointer hover over the icon.

Some icons are connected directly to a specific tool/function, while others are connected to a menu for a specific tool group, such as the route tool menu.

## 2.2.5: Dropdown menus

Seilte tra	ck	R								
Primær pos. giver										
Vise:		avn	/Dat	0						
I	₹ T	idsm	ırk.	10	) mir	• ۱				
e Fra	1	m	ars	1	990	-				
				_		=				
Til	1.	jar	nuar	2	005	•				
Etter	1	l j	anu	ar 2	200	5	Þ			
•	ma	ti	on	to	fr	Ø	SE			
Tabal						0	2			
Total:	8	4	5	6	7	8	9			
Vela:	10	11	12	13	14	15	16			
	17	18	19	20	21	22	28			
Sekunda	24	25	26	27	28	29	30			
Vise:	81			_,						
	2	)I d	ag:	80.(	09.2	2010	)			

Dropdown menus are opened by clicking the small arrow icon on the right side of the dropdown menu. Choose between available values by leftclicking the desired value. Arrow keys and the enter key on the supplied keyboard can also be used. Use the tab key to switch between function fields.

In dropdown menus for date selection a calendar will appear as illustrated. Right and left arrow are used to cycle between months. By clicking the month name you will also be able to select the month in a dropdown list.

To change the year, simply click on the year displayed and select using the displayed up and dawn arrows.

Months are selected by clicking the right and left arrow or by selecting from the dropdown list that appears when you click the name of the month. When you click on the desired day/date, the calendar will close and you have selected that date.

## 2.2.6: Popup windows

All popup windows that are opened in the TECDIS program can be moved around in the chart view. Place the pointer on the header-part of the window, left-click and hold, and pan the window to the desired position.

Windows with the TECDIS icon in the header, can be resized by dragging the window borders to the desired positions.

# **2.3: The TECDIS screen**

The TECDIS system starts directly to the chart program. The TECDIS screen that appears looks as follows:

## 2.3.1: Parts of the screen



The program is divided into three main areas:

- 1. The information panel
  - Placed to the right of the screen. Displays position data and navigation data, along with the system settings menus when they are open.
- 2. The main Toolbar
  - Placed at the top or to the left of the screen, depending on the configured setting. This is configured in TECDIS setup, see A.4 Vessel settings (Specification)(see page 227)
- 3. The chart view
  - Covers most of the screen. Chart, symbols, routes and past track are some of the functionality displayed here.

Depending of how you navigate in TECDIS, the screen will divide itself in two additional areas:

- 1. The function toolbar
  - Placed to the left of the screen. Changes depending on the activated tool.
- 2. The function window
  - Placed mainly in the bottom half of the screen. Changes depending on the activated tool. Some function windows are placed elsewhere on the screen.
## 2.3.2: Own vessel position

Own vessel position is displayed graphically with the shape that is set in the Ship menu 7.4.3: Viewing the double circle(see page 197)



Beam line & Heading line Double circle Ship contour

- Heading line indicates the present vessel heading.
- Beam line is perpendicular to the Heading line.
- The Course Vector indicates the current vessel course over ground (COG). The end point of this line shows where the vessel will be if the appointed course it is followed after a certain time (minutes), specified in the Ship menu.
- If Show Double Circle is selected in the Ship menu, the vessel position will be marked with a double circle.
- If Show ship contour is selected in the Ship menu, the vessel's relative size compared to the chart scale will be displayed.
- If both options are selected the chart system will select the best display given the current conditions.

If both the double circle and ship contour is selected, the system will automatically select which of the two symbols to display. When the vessel symbol becomes to small, TECDIS automatically switches to the circle symbol; and opposite when a smaller scale is selected.

In all chart orientations except Head the charts will be static and the vessel will move(true movement). When the chart orientation is set to Head the vessel will have a fixed position on the screen while the charts move (relative movment).

## 2.3.3: Screen light setting: Day - dusk - night

Dag

The colours displayed on the screen can be adjusted for different lighting conditions. The screen light dropdown menu is found to the right of the STOP button on the main toolbar. By pressing the text or the arrow besides it the dropdown menu will open. Select the screen lighting option that suits the conditions with the left mouse button.



The selected configuration will remain visible in the dropdown menu when it is closed, for quick review of the selected mode.

For optimal lyssetting må også skjerm justeres for lys og kontrast. Dersom skjermen er for mørk, kan dette begrense synligheten av informasjon, spesielt ved bruk av kveld- og nattlyssettingene. Lysstyrkekontrollen på skjermen har en markering for kalibrert verdi. See *7.9: Monitor calibration*(see page 212)for more information.

## **2.3.4:** The information panel

The information panel on the right side of the chart display include:

- 1. Date and time (the top line)
- Sensor data for navigation (GPS, gyro, log and a trip counter that you can reset) By clicking with the cursor another place in this field, you enlarge the text size.
- 3. Cursor information (cursor position, bearing and distance from ship to cursor) By pressing the "Pos" button, you center the chart in the entered position. By pressing "BRG T" you can switch between true (BRG T) and relative (BRG R) bearing. By clicking with the cursor another place in this field, you enlarge the text size. By pressing the "NM" button, you cycle between displaying units in NM or meters.
- 4. Depth and Tide information (expandable)
- 5. Wind speed (True or Relative, expandable)
- Drift (Calculated based on COG, SOG, HDG and STW, expandable)
- 7. Chart display for the anti grounding system
- 8. **Menu folders** (available from the menu folder button on the main toolbar, or by moving the cursor to the bottom edge of the anti grounding chart display)
- Voyage information and/or Autopilot information (displayed during sailing of active routes)
- 10. Alarms, warnings and notifications

### **2.3.4.1: Expanded sensor information**

By pressing the arrow button to the left of the sensor information for wind, depth and drift, you can expand the information displayed, with an added graphical presentation.





## 2.3.5: The main toolbar

At the top of the screen you find the main toolbar, which gives access to main system functions. This section contains a brief description of the different functions.

STOP	Stop TECDIS	AUTO	Auto chart repos- itioning
Dag 🔻	Monitor colour	₽\$?	Query cursor
Nord 🔹	Chart orientation	$\mathbf{S}$	EBL/VRM Bearing
STD	STD S52 AUTO chart present- ation	្នំ។	Show ARPA targets
USER	USER configured chart presentation	<b>AIS</b> <sup>4</sup>	Show AIS targets
and the second s	Conning and anchorwatch		MOB symbol / event- marker
£	Weather overlay	$\mathbb{N}$	Route planner
٩	Radar overlay	5	Past Track
	Video switching		Symbols
<u>83</u>	Zoom in	Å	Maritime cal- culations/LOP
2000000	Chart scale	9	NAVTEX
÷	Zoom out		Settings menu
•	Show overview chart		

Chart scales:





# The chart view

In this chapter we will look closer at how charts are presented in TECDIS, and how you move around in the charts.

3.1:Moving around in the chart	43
3.1.1:Chart panning	43
3.1.2:Set chart center - visually	43
3.1.3:Set chart center - enter position	43
3.2:Automatic Chart Centering	45
3.3:Chart scale	46
3.3.1:Chart zooming - automatic scaling	46
3.3.2:Chart zooming with manual scaling	47
3.3.3:Automatic zooming during route sailing	47
3.3.4:Zooming without changing chart scale	47
3.3.5:NB! Overscale and underscale	48
3.4:Chart symbols - IHO Presentation library	49
3.5:Chart presentation	50
3.5.1:Standard presentation mode (STD)	50
3.5.2:User defined presentation mode (USER)	50
3.5.3:Full hazards display	51
3.6:Chart symbols - own objects	53
3.6.1:MOB symbol / eventmarker	53
3.6.2. Opening the symbol menu	53
Side of the symbol ment	
3.6.3:Add new, modify or delete symbol (objects)	55
3.6.3:Add new, modify or delete symbol (objects)	55

# **3.1: Moving around in the chart**

## 3.1.1: Chart panning

When you move the pointer to one of the chart view edges, it will change shape to a directional arrow. By left-clicking you will then move the chart view in the arrows direction.

Alternatively you can pan the chart with the arrow keys on your keyboard.

If you move the pointer to a corner in the chart view, you will be able to pan diagonally in the chart.

### 3.1.2: Set chart center - visually

To move a point in the chart view to the centre of the chart view, you move the pointer to that point and click the middle mouse button.

### 3.1.3: Set chart center - enter position

The chart center can be moved to a given position by pressing the Pos. button in the sensor field in the information panel.

In the window that appears in the left upper side of the display, you enter the desired position in the fields. The Ins button on the keyboard will also open this window.

You can enter the position in either degrees, minutes and decimals, or in degrees, minutes and seconds. To switch between these mode, you press the button to the far left of the position window. To show an onscreen keyboard, press the downward pointing arrow to the right in the window.



nter position 🛛 💌			
58°25.8	58°25.309' N 010°41.211' E		
* ′ /100			
Tab	NSEW	Left	Right
7	8	9	Dkon
4	5	6	вкзр
1	2	8	Enton
	0	_	Ellfer

When you are finished entering the desired chart center position, you press the Chart center button to pan the chart view to that position, and the position is indicated in the chart. This function is also very useful when placing objects (symbols, lines, areas) in given positions.

Enter position 🛛 🗙				
58°45.0	570' N	009°44	5.493′ E	
°′/100 Chart centre 🔣			re 🔣	
Tab	NSEW	Left	Right	
7	8	9	Diren	
4	5	6	вкѕр	
1	2	8	Enton	
	0	-	Enter	

When a symbol, line or area is selected for placing, and you have selected which colour to use, simply enter the position in the Pos. window and press the Chart Center button. Press again on the same button, now called Save. Exit the window by pressing the **OK** button.

Enter pos	ition		X
58°45.	569' N	009°4	5.493′ E
°′/100 Save			
Tab	NSEW	Left	Right
7	8	9	Dkon
4	5	6	вкѕр
1	2	8	Enton
0		-	Encer

# **3.2: Automatic Chart Centering**

TECDIS can automatically ensure that the chart is oriented so that own vessel always is visible ( the chart is moving according to the vessel).

This function is activated by clicking on the *Auto* button on the Main Toolbar, the *Hom*e key on the keyboard or by clicking with the cursor anywhere in the Sensor *Data field* in the *Information panel*.

AUTO	Auto chart switch is 'Off'.
AUTO	Auto chart switch is 'Off', but Auto function will remain active when zooming with mouse clicks in the chart area.
AUTO	Auto chart swich is 'On' until zooming with mouse clicks in the chart area.
AUTO	Auto chart switch is 'On', and will not be deactivated when zooming with mouse clicks in the chart area.

Setting the Chart Scale and zoom level by using the Zoom buttons on the Main Toolbar, will NOT turn off Auto mode. Locking the Auto mode is done by clicking Auto with the right mouse button.

Auto sensitivity (how often shall the chart view be redrawn to keep up with the vessel movement) and Ship symbol offcenter (how much of the chart view shall be in front of the vessel) can be adjusted in the Ship menu.

## **3.3: Chart scale**

The chart scale and orientation is visible all the time, through the following two elements in the chart display:

- North arrow, indicating the direction of magnetic north when the chart is rotated
- Chart scale ruler on the left side of the chart display

The scale ruler will change colour based on scale and distance between colour-segments(units):

Scale interval:	Colour:	Units:	
1:1 – 1:7500	Yellow / White	0,1 Nm (0,1')	
1:7501 – 1:100 000	Red / White	1 Nm (1')	
1:100 001 – 1:2 000 000	Black / White	10 Nm (10')	
1:2 000 001 - 1:100 000 000	Blue / White	60 Nm (1°)	

If the generation of a new chart display (after panning or zooming) takes 6 seconds or longer, an indicator for expected generation time will appear in the upper left corner of the chart display. This indicator will only be displayed on chart displays with extremely high information density.



## 3.3.1: Chart zooming - automatic scaling

To zoom into the chart, you place the pointer where you want the centrepoint of the new chart display to be, and click on the left trackball button.

To zoom out from the current chart display, click on the right trackball button. The new chart display will centre around the point where the mouse-pointer was.

Alternatively you can use the +, -, page down and page up keys on the keyboard to change zoom levels.

The program will automatically select the appropriate chart-type for the selected chart scale. The marker will now be moved to the chart centre.

## **3.3.2:** Chart zooming with manual scaling

From the main toolbar you can select the chart scale directly. The numbers represent the scale times 1000. You select the scale by clicking on one of the buttons on the main toolbar. Alternatively you can set the scale directly from the keyboard, using the letter for the wanted chart scale (W, A, **B**, **C**, **D**, **E**, **F** or **G** keys).



When the letter of the different scale buttons is displayed with yellow text and a green background, it indicates that official charts are available at this scale level. These official charts will always be prioritized.

If the system is in auto mode, the displayed chart scale is at the position of your own vessel. If you manually navigate the charts, the displayed chart scale is for the centre of the chart display. If your own vessel is outside the chart display, the displayed chart scale is for the centre of the chart display. The button indicating the presently selected chart scale.

Under the main toolbar, text warnings are shown for the following situations:



- No ENC available
- Better ENC available
- No charts are available, refer to paper charts
- Not official chart display
- Over-scaled

### **3.3.3:** Automatic zooming during route sailing

For version 4.7.x.19 and above it is possible to configure automatic zooming to given scales for each waypoint in a route. This is done in the voyage planner, by adding the following shortcode in the text field of the wanted waypoint: Scale **1:xxxxx**, **whe**re xxxxx is replaced by the wanted scale.

### **3.3.4: Zooming without changing chart scale**

The zoom buttons on the main toolbar can be used to change the scale the chart is viewed in. If you use the Zoom in or Zoom out buttons



with the left mouse button, the chart view automatically changes so that details are viewed using the most appropriate chart database.

If you use the right mouse button on the Zoom buttons, the details will be viewed using the chart scale last used before you zoomed in or out. The number in the centre shows the current scale.

If you hover the mouse pointer over the middle field, a yellow helptext-line will appear, showing you the original scale for the currently shown chart. By clicking in



the field you will set the current chart scale to the displayed original scale.

This function can be overridden by charts from another chart database TECDIS uses several types of charts, but will always prioritize official charts.

#### **2 2 C**. **NB! Overscale and underscale** When the lowest code available in the chart database is a

When the lowest scale available in the chart database is reached, you can still zoom further into the chart, but this will only be a graphical enlargement and there is no more refinement in displayed chart information. This is called **overscale**.

Any flaws that might be in the charts will be enlarged together with the chart display. The field that indicates your currently selected scale will be displayed in orange when the chart display is in overscale mode.

Overscale will in addition be displayed with vertical lines on the chart. When parts of the displayed chart is in overscale, only these parts are marked with vertical lines.



When you zoom out from your current chart display, you may enter a state of underscale. The chart information display can then be to dense and chart information may not be displayed. The field that indicates your currently selected scale will be displayed in green when the chart display is in underscale mode.

## **3.4: Chart symbols - IHO Presentation library**

The IHO Presentation library provides an overview of all ECDIS symbols and test images.

The library *is opened* by pressing Control + Alt + Shift + T.

By pressing the keys 0 to 9 on your keyboard, you cycle between the pages of symbols in the presentation library. To view a description of the different symbols, utilize the chart inspector/query cursor.



The main toolbar is hidden when the presentation library is opened, but can be accessed by moving the pointer to the top of the monitor.

The presentation library is closed by pressing the Esc button on your keyboard. You can view the version number of the presentation library by pressing the ? button (chart legend button) in the Chart **menu** See chapter 7.3: The Chart menu(see page 193)

## **3.5: Chart presentation**

STD

USER

By pressing the two buttons STD and USER you can easily select or change between two types of chart presentations: ECDIS Standard or user defined.

## **3.5.1: Standard presentation mode (STD)**



STD displays the official standard presenation for ECDIS, S52. This is a standard set by IMO, with certain colours, symbols and contents (see the illustration to the left). The image to the right displays the use defines INT1 chart presentation. By pressing the STD button, IMO-defined presentation is displayed and Auto Mode is activated (the chart is centered on and follows the movements of the vessel).

# 3.5.2: User defined presentation mode (USER)

The USER Mode displays the customizable chart presentation. The configuration is done in the Chart menu tab.

The largest field of the Chart menu shows all options for chart display. You can include information in the chart view by selecting it in the Chart menu; if you remove the selection the information will be hidden.



On the button row below you will find five different presets for the USER Mode:



Base displays a bare minimum of chart information.

Standard contain the same chart information as STD Mode.

1, 2 and 3 are user customizable presets.

On the bottom line you can select if you want to use S52 or INT1 presentation modes.

When using INT1 a warning is give: Not official presentation.

The button to the far right determines the size of text and symbols in the chart. In STD Mode this is set to 1.0.

### 3.5.3: Full hazards display

With Full hazards display on the hazards placed (displayed) within safety contour and the isolated dangers placed outside the safety contour, which are deeper than "Safe" depth. In STD mode this is turned off as standard, but it can also be activated from the Chart menu tab.

#### **3.5.3.1:** Full safe hazards on anti grounding alarms

In TECDIS it is possible to set the system to turn on full safe hazards when an anti grounding alarm is generated. Depending on other settings in the Safe menu, you will then be warned in good time before a grounding, and get all necessary information for situation evaluation.

Auto safe hazards and Shallow soundings can be turned on for anti grounding alarms in the Safe menu tab. See 7.7.3: Auto Safe Hazard display setting(see page 208).

### 3.5.3.2: Danger symbol

The setting "Danger Symbol" marks any hazard on the chart with a danger symbol. This setting is active by default in STD mode and when the "Safe Hazards" is activated in STD mode, all risks (including those within safety contour) are marked with danger symbols. When this is deactivated, only isolated dangers outside the safety contour is shown with danger symbols.



8

8

#### Safe hazards OFF

#### Danger symbol ON

Dangerous objects outside safety contour are displayed with danger symbol.

med faresymboler.

Dangerous objects within safety contour are not displayed. Hazards deeper than safety depth are not displayed.

#### Safe hazards ON

#### Danger symbol ON

Dangerous objects outside safety contour are displayed with danger symbol.

Dangerous objects inside safety contour are displayed with danger symbol.

Hazards deeper than safety depth are displayed normally.

#### Safe hazards ON

#### Danger symbol OFF

Dangerous objects outside safety contour are displayed normally ( with black text).

Dangerous objects within safety contour are displayed normally.

Hazards deeper than safety depth are displayed normally (with gray text)

NB: In STD mode, hazards deeper than the safety depth are not displayed, regardless of "Safe hazards" settings!

# 3.6: Chart symbols - own objects

It is easy to insert your own symbols in TECDIS. You have the following types of chart symbols available:

- Lines
- Areas
- Point symbols

Symbols can be used to mark a danger zone not present in any chart or chart update, or to mark fishing grounds. Lines and areas can be connected to the alarm system in TECDIS, and it can be colour coded in 5 (6) available colours.

At a glance you can set symbols where you want, to mark what you want. In the following subchapters we will explain how you place symbols in the chart, how you change them and what attributes can be set for them.

## 3.6.1: MOB symbol / eventmarker

These two functions are the quickest to place. They are available on the MOB icon in the main toolbar.

- A MOB symbol (Man OverBoard) is placed in the position of the vessel by left clicking the icon, or by pressing the F10 key on the keyboard. TECDIS automatically starts a bearing to the MOB symbol. The symbol is removed by pressing the F7 key on the keyboard, or by removing it like you would remove other symbols.
- An event marker symbol is placed in the position of the vessel by right clicking the icon, or by pressing the F11/F12 key on the keyboard. This symbol marks an event, and you can enter text for it in the chart inspector.

## 3.6.2: Opening the symbol menu

By clicking on the Symbol button (or the F7 key on the keyboard) a window opens titled Mariner Objects. From here you can edit, select and add different objects (symbols, lines and areas) that will be displayed on the chart. It is also possible to filter previously entered objects on a time line and by color.

## 3.6.2.1: Selecting and displaying objects (symbol, line and area)

Mariner objects are displayed in the chart by clicking on the "Show" button and removed from the screen with "Hide" button. When Mariner objects are visible, the icon button from Main Toolbar is activated.



The upper frame of the dialog box provides control over which Mariner objects to be displayed.

- Check "All" to display all Mariner objects (tick the box when add or modify symbols/line/area).
- Uncheck All to display objects filtered by:
  - Colour
  - Symbol type
  - If the Show time box is checked, display is limited to symbols:
    - that where made after the From data, but before the To date
    - that where made after the After date

Note that only the first two date conditions ("From" and "To"), or only the third condition ("After") must be satisfied, for an object to be displayed. For example, if the operator wants to display only symbols created in a certain previous time period (without viewing recent created symbols), the time period can be introduced in "From" and "To" date fields, whiles "After" is set to a future date.

In addition, "boat hook " button is used to select a single line or area object by selecting the name or directly clicking on it in the chart. Circular areas are selected by clicking on the circle center mark.

Selected objects appear highlighted in the chart and the "print "button in the dialog window is activated and can be used to create a position/waypoint list for the selected objects. This list can be saved to external media or printed (if a printer is connected).

# 3.6.3: Add new, modify or delete symbol (objects)

By pressing "F7" or "Edit Symbol" in the "Mariner Objects" window, a new (vertical) toolbar appears on the left side of the chart display. The top three buttons functions: Delete object symbol,
 Change/Move object symbol and Add new symbol. The rest of the buttons enables the use of different objects symbols and colors.

Delete symbols: enable Delete function/mode by clicking on the "Delete" button. The button will now be activated while the deletion mode is active. Delete individual symbols by clicking the left mouse button with the cursor over the icon.To exit the Delete function/mode click "OK" or right mouse button.

Change / Move symbols: enable Edit / Move mode by clicking the "Change / Move" button. The button will now be activated while the modification mode is active. By clicking the left mouse button with the cursor over a symbol on the chart, this will be changed,moved and /or colored, to currenly selected symbo/color in the vertical toolbar. The new symbol will move with the cursor until is placed in the desired position by clicking the left mouse button again (the previous position and appearance of the symbol will be marked as deleted). To exit the Edit /Move mode click "OK" or the right mouse button.



 $\square$ 

Ð

۲

i

÷

7

ļ

÷÷

۱

нþ

\$

۲

×

Add New Symbol: enable New Symbol mode by clicking on the "New Symbol" button. The button will now be activated while the mode is active. In this mode, a new icon/symbol will be placed on the chart, with the selected shape and color (from the vertical toolbar), by clicking left mouse button in the desired position.

A window will open in the lower part of the chart. Information about the new object, can be introduced here. This is stored as a short visible text displayed in the chart and as a detailed text not visible in the chart. Click the left mouse button or the "OK" button when data is entered, to close the window.

OK

OK: This button will terminate any of the three active modes described above. If none of the modes are activated, this button will exit the symbol menu.

17 Symbol Buttons: There are a total of 17 icons available in the toolbar, where the currently selected symbol is marked as inactive.

Note: The top four symbols are fixed, cannot be changed and will always be presented in orange

Open Symbols Selection: Symbols, other than those found in the menu, can be accessed from the symbol library. Open symbol selection with the folder icon. First select the symbol that will be replaced in the toolbar. Then select the new symbol from the symbol library, by clicking it. The new symbol will now appear in the toolbar. Close symbol library by clicking the folder icon



Velg først det symbolet som skal byttes ut fra verktøylinjen. Velg så det nye symbolet fra symbolbiblioteket. Symbolet på verktøylinjen byttes da automatisk ut. Lukk symbolbiblioteket ved å trykke på mappesymbolet.

6 color selection buttons: These buttons show color choices available symbol colors. The selected color appears as a activated button.

The above mentioned functions only works with symbols added by you. Symbols placed in the charts by the chart provider cannot be edited.

# **3.6.4: Add new, modify or delete custom** lines / areas

By pressing "F8" key or "Edit line/Area " in the "Mariner objects " window, a different (vertical) toolbar appears on the left edge of the chart display. This toolbar provides access to functions that enables the creation, modification and deletion of lines and areas on the chart. Toolbar functionality is the same type as in the previous chapter.

Position list: Gives an overview of the different positions for the points the line/are is made of. You can also edit the point placement by inserting new values directly into the list. Position is given in degrees and decimal minutes.

"Delete" (lines and areas): The Delete feature is enabled by clicking on the "Delete" button. The button will now be activated. Delete custom lines / spaces, by clicking on the left mouse button with the cursor over the line symbol or on the center of circular areas. Exit delete mode by clicking "OK" or right mouse button.

"Edit line /change color" (modify / move lines and areas): This feature is only available for multipoint lines and areas. Enable the modify / move mode by pressing the "Edit line/change color" button. The button will now be activated and several operations can be performed.

to move/modify a corner: left-click on the corner. Move it to the new location and left-click once again to anchor it.

to add a new corner to a straight line: left-click on a straight line. Move it in the desired location and left-click to anchor it.

to delete a corner: right-click the point to delete.

OK button to exit the mode.



Add new line/area: you can insert the following lines/areas:

Lines

- Circular areas
- Multi-point areas
- Circular areas
  Rectangular areas

The selected function will be displayed with a light background when activated. Simple lines, circular and rectangular areas' extent / size are set in by another click on the left mouse button. For multi-point lines or areas, each click of the left mouse button will place a new 'grip' point. Click the "OK" button or right mouse button to finish the line. When begin to draw an item, a window will open in the lower part of the chart. Here you can register a brief or detailed information text about the new object. The short text is visible on the chart whilst the detailed description is hidden. Press "Enter" - or "OK" button when data is entered, to close the window.

Position Line (bearing line): To mark a bearing position in the chart, select "Position line" drawing feature and activate the drawing mode by clicking "Draw new " icon. When the start point of the bearing position is placed on the chart - by clicking the left mouse button a small window opens where a specified angle can be entered and so locking the bearing line. Left-click again to place the end point of the bearing position and a new window will open in the lower part of the chart, where a brief or detailed information text, about the new formed object, can be entered.

Mariner object: POSITION LINE (id: 10015) 19 / 09 - 2013 10:3	30				×
		*	1 1 2 3	4 5 6 7 8 9	0 + \ Bksp
Bearing: 003.3 ° (183.3 °) Time: 10:30:00 -			Tab q w	ertyui	o p å " ′
			as	d f g h j k	I ø æ Enter
			Del z	x c v b n m	· Shift
OK	Kartdata	Bildefile	Ctrl < lock	(	Lft Up Dn Rgt

Click the left mouse button or the "OK" button when data is entered, to close the window.

"Marked area" (multi-point area): This button is used to enter multipoint/multiple-line areas. After the first point is placed in the chart a window pops up at the bottom of the chart where a brief or detailed information text, about the new object, can be entered. The short description is visible on the chart whilst the detailed description is hidden. Also, in the same pop-up window by checking the feature box "Fill", the newly created surface can be shaded. Click the left mouse button or the "OK" button when data is added, to close this window.

6 colour selection buttons: These buttons show available colour choices for lines and areas. Red colour indicates danger and the red objects will generate alarms when anti-grounding alarm zone is overlapping with the object. Red objects are also displayed regardless of symbol visibility, status and filtering.

The above mentioned functions only works with symbols added by you. Symbols placed in the charts by the chart provider cannot be edited.

## **3.7: Chart orientation**

In TECDIS you can change the chart orientation freely between up to 5 modes.

By clicking either the text or the arrow besides it you will open a dropdown list where you can select the orientation you want:

• NORTH(standard)

 stands for "north up", and means that north will always be towards the top of the monitor, regardless of own vessel course. Will automatically be selected by the system if placed in STD mode

COURSE

stands for course up, meaning that the current course the vessel is travelling at will be shown towards the top of the display. It will not change even if the vessel later changes course.

HEAD

 stands for head up, meaning that the vessels bow will always be shown towards the top of the display. The vessel will have a fixed position on the display, and the chart view will alter during sailing (relative motion)

• Radar

• means that the chart orientation always will follow the connected radar orientation. If you change the orientation or the range of the radar, TECDIS

will automatically reorient itself with the same chart view and chart scale as the radar.

- (RADAR 2)
  - Only appears if two radars are connected to TECDIS. TECDIS

North North Course Head Radar1 Radar2



# Navigation

In this chapter we will look closer at how TECDIS can be used during planning and performing voyages. You will also get an in-depth view of how TECDIS works as an anti-grounding system, and how you can maintain a safe voyage even if all sensors are lost.

4.1:Route planning	63
4.1.1:An introduction	63
4.1.2:Starting the route planning tool	64
4.1.3:Draw a route directly in the charts	65
4.1.4:Activating the selected route	68
4.1.5:Automatic route generation with Jeppesen C-Routes	69
4.1.6:Search and Rescue - SAR	73
4.1.7:Primary and secondary routes	75
4.1.8:Route organizer	75
4.1.9:Delete selected route	77
4.1.10:Voyage planner	79
4.1.11:Saving and exporting a route list	82
4.1.12:Extending a route	82
4.1.13:Modify waypoints directly in the charts	83
4.1.14:Merge routes	84
4.1.15:Copy selected route	85
4.1.16:Great circle route	85
4.1.17:Add index lines	86
4.1.18:Display sight lines	87
4.2:Route navigation	88
4.2.1:Navigation information	88
4.2.2:Larger CTS values	89
4.2.3:Route name text field	89
4.2.4:Calculation of the voyage duration	89
4.2.5:Primary and secondary routes	90
4.2.6:Notify Waypoint / Critical Point on the voyage	90
4.2.7:Hazards and alerts on a route	91
4.3:EBL/VRM Bearing	. 93
4.3.1:Bearing functions	93
4.3.2:General about EBL / VRM operation	93
4.3.3:Temporary/quick route - route with route monitoring in three clicks.	94
4.3.4:Storage and export of Bearing Position and of Line Of Pos- ition (LOP)	95

4.4:Anti grounding	97
4.5:Notifications and alarms	
4.5.1:Confirm alarms and warnings	
4.5.2:Alarm list	
4.5.3:Alarm texts	101
4.5.4:Warning text	103
4.5.5:Text messages	105
4.6:Past track lines	
4.6.1:Primary position source	
4.6.2:Secondary position source	
4.6.3:Convert past track to route	107
4.6.4:Show and Hide buttons	
4.7:Maritime calculations	
4.7.1:Calculate	
4.7.2:Lines of Position (LOP)	111

## **4.1: Route planning**

Route planning in TECDIS is easy to master, and at the same time it is a powerful toolset. In this chapter you will get an introduction to route planning in general and an overview of the tools available for you.

Knowledge of navigation in general, and approved training in the use of ECDIS is a prerequisite for correct use of TECDIS in route planning and navigation.

## 4.1.1: An introduction

Route planning is a key activity that forms the base of any safe voyage. A route plan is a comprehensive, port to port guide, developed by and utilized by the vessels navigators to find the best route, to identify potential dangers or issues along the voyage, and to commit the day to day decisions to a plan with safety for the vessel and crew at its core.

During route planning those parts of a route that has the highest potential risks involved, should be reviewed an extra time. During those reviews restrictions for ensuring safe sailing should be outlined. This should be done before sailing begins.

## **4.1.2:** Starting the route planning tool

The route planning button is placed in the main toolbar. It activates the route planning toolbar on the left side of the display.

When a route is selected, or activated for sailing, this toolbar will appear automatically when the cursor is hovered over the upper left corner of the display. The route planning toolbar is automatically hidden by the system if it has not been in use within the last minute.

The toolbar has the following functions:

#### Make new routes

- Draw a new route directly in the charts
- Make a route with coordinates directly in the voyage planner
- Activate the selected route
- C-routes automatic route generation
- Search And Rescue (SAR)

#### Organizing the routes

- Primary and secondary routes
- Route selector and route search, with route export
- Delete selected route
- Voyage planner
- Save and export the route list

#### Modify existing routes

- Extending a route
- Modify waypoints directly in the charts
- Merge routes
- Copy selected route
- Great circle route
- Add index lines

### 4.1.3: Draw a route directly in the charts



Press the Make a new route button to start the process of creating a route.

- The cursor is placed on the position in the charts where you want to place the first waypoint. Press the left mouse button to set the first waypoint(W1). This will start the voyage planner, and a new window will appear at the bottom of the display. In it you can enter the route name and several describing tags ?(from, to, owner, tags) This information is used in route search and the route organiser
- 2. Continue drawing the route by moving the cursor to the desired location for the next waypoint, and press the left mouse button to place the waypoint. A line will now appear between the two waypoints, indicating the route leg. You are now ready to place the next waypoint. Continue placing waypoints until you are satisfied with the route displayed in the chart.
- 3. Finish drawing the route by pressing the right mouse button, or by selecting OK in the route planner toolbar. A route can contain up to 500 waypoints.

The corridor width is set in the voyuage planner as described in *4.1.10: Voyage planner*(see page 79).

If a turn radius is deemed invalid by the system (if it is too big), the turn will not be drawn in the chart, and a warning will be given each time the route is selected.

Waypoint coordinates can be entered manually with the keyboard.

## 4.1.3.1: How to change the chart view during route drawing

To move the chart view during waypoint placing, use the middle mouse button to recenter the chart to the position where the cursor is. Alternatively you can move the cursor to the chart view edges, and press the left mouse button when the cursor changes form to an arrow.

Chart scale is changed in the main toolbar, alternatively by using the scroll wheel (if available). Navigating the charts can with great benefit also be done by using the scale shortcuts on the keyboard, see 3.3: Chart scale(see page 46).

## 4.1.3.2: How to separate a new route from existing routes in the chart view.

When you are drawing a new route, or modifying an existing, all other existing routes are shown in the chart view as well, but in grey.



If active lead sectors are turned on (in the Chart menu tab), lead sectors are shown by the cursor position.

The selected route is marked by a red line with directional arrows. Each waypoint is shown on that red line with a circle and a waypoint number (W1,2, etc) On the line between waypoints, you can select to have planned course and speed displayed.

#### 4.1.3.3: Route check



When the last waypoint in the route is set, the route will automatically be checked for dangers. The lines of the voyage corridor has different colours, displaying the route leg safety status:

Corridor colour	Explanation
Green	The route leg is safe and there are no warnings for this route leg/turn.
Yellow	Chart objects with warnings are found in this route leg/turn.
Red	Danger objects are found in this route leg/turn.
Grey	The safety check for this route leg has failed. Split the route leg in two.

If the last waypoint is within a distance of 0,1 Nm from the first waypoint, the route will be generated as a circle.

Automatic route check only happens if Auto route activation is selected in the Safe menu tab.

## **4.1.4:** Activating the selected route

You can activate you selected route in several ways, both automatically and manually. This table provides an overview:

Automatic activation when inside the route corridor	For this to be possible the auto route activation has to be selected in the Safe menu tab.
Manual activation when inside the route corridor	Is done by pressing the activate route button on the route planner toolbar.
Automatic activation, with placing	For this to be possible the auto route
of additional waypoint creating a	activation has to be selected in the
route leg from the vessel position	Safe menu tab, and Allow route activ-
to a user selectable place on the	ation entry lane has to be selected in
route	TECDIS Setup.
Manual activation, activation, with	For this to be possible <b>Allow route</b>
placing of additional waypoint cre-	<b>activation entry lane</b> has to be
ating a route leg from the vessel	selected in TECDIS Setup.
position to a user selectable place	Is done by pressing the activate route
on the route	button on the route planner toolbar.

Note: If you have configured route activation with placing of additional waypoint creating a route leg from the vessel position to a user selectable place on the route, you can from version 4.7.x.23 select any point on the route leg. You are not restricted to only selecting existing waypoints. Note that a new waypoint will be created in that position if there is not one there already.

# 4.1.5: Automatic route generation with Jeppesen C-Routes

C-Routes is distributed as an integrated part of the Jeppesen Professional+ chart database, and is therefore only available on TECDIS units with Professional+ installed and activated. In addition there has to be valid chart licenses for the entire area you intend to create routes in.

#### 4.1.5.1: About C-Routes

The C-Routes automatic route generation tool includes functionality for automatic generation of route proposals to/from a wide array of ports and user defined positions. The system utilises a grid of predefined route legs all over the world, and combines them in to one route for you. Some sea areas and ports are not part of the grid, contact Jeppesen if you experience that your desired port/location is not available.

🚱 Lage ny rute med C-Routes 🛛 🛛 🗙					
Rute navn	20120427 Tjoeme Danmark				
New Stop	o posisjon	1	TJOEME	Info	
<ul> <li>Spesifise</li> </ul>	ert posisjon Set	2	FREDERIKSHAVN		
<ul> <li>Land</li> </ul>	Denmark 🔹 Info	4	ANHOLT	▼	
Havn	<b>_</b>	5	SAEBY	X	
Restrictions Add Del Flere valg Keyboard LAG RUTE Avbryt					
Details for ANHOLT Country: Denmark					
Max Dept Port Size:	h: 3.4 m. : Unknown		Assist Tugs		
Web:         com/english/gen-info/ports/port_angola.htm#cabinda           Email:         http://home.houston.rr.com/nugent/durres.html         Chart					

The route proposition takes traffic separation systems into account, along with all other chart functions and the vessel draught, when calculating the route. This functionality can shorten the route planning process and help minimise the navigator workload significantly.

*The C-Ro*utes library is developed by Jeppesen Marine and aids the navigator in the route planning process. The most important feature is the ability to swiftly calculate the shortest possible route between two ports. The route calculation is based on matching requirements given by the vessel with the territorial limitations along the planned route.

#### 4.1.5.2: Start C-Routes



In the route planning toolbar, press the *C-routes* button. A window will open with the C-Routes planning tool

The planning tool is divided in to several fields:

- Route name
- New Stop
- Restrictions

- Options
- Keyboard
- CREATE

#### **4.1.5.3:** Route name

In this field you add the name you want for your route. Use terminology that makes it easy for others to pick up the route later.

#### 4.1.5.4: Enter a new stop for the voyage

This is done in the field New Stop. You can select between three ways to specify the stop:

Own ship pos- ition	Often used to set the first waypoint for the voyage.	
Specified pos- ition	If this is selected, and you press the Set button, you can then left click with the cursor in the position in the chart where you want to place the waypoint.	
Select from port list	Used to select ports that are found in the <i>C</i> -Routes port list. The list is divided in to nationalities, and you ther- erfore have to first select the corresponding country for the port you want to add i the first dropdown list, and the select the port in the second, lower dropdown list. In the dropdown list it is also possible to enter the first letter for the country/port.	

When the port/position is specified, use the Play button to transfer the entry to the port-of-call list.

#### 4.1.5.5: Port-of-call list

Next to the New Stop field, there is a Port-of-call list. As you add ports for your voyage, this list will fill up. When you have added all ports of call you desire, you can edit their order with the arrow buttons next to the list. You can delete a port of call by pressing the X button nexct to the list.

You can also get more information about the port of call you have selected in the list, by pressing the Info button. Information that is displayed includes (among other) the maximum draught for vessels entering the port. This information is displayed at the bottom part of the C-Routes window.

Ports marked in red in the port-of-call list: These ports have a maximum draught that exceeds the capacity of the port. This port must either be deleted, switched for an alternative port nearby, or the navigator has to select ignore ship draft in the C-Routes Options button.

Ports marked in yellow in the port-of-call list: The port database does not have information on depth for the port.

To display a port from the port-of-call list in the chart view, press the Chart button at the bottom of the C-Routes window. Pressing this button will center the chart on the selected port.

#### 4.1.5.6: Restrictions - add and delete

Chart

When a sea area, bridges, canals, objects or places, are considered obstructions for the own



vessel, it can be inserted restrictions in the form of a red slash across those areas which C-Routes will not take into the route calculation. Adding and deleting these restrictions is done using the Add and Del buttons.



In an early planning stage, you should zoom out in the chart so that the entire route can be visible. When minimum two ports of call are set, the *C*-*Route* is drawn as an orange preliminary route.

When the Add button is pressed, the cursor will change and with a left click in the desired position in the chart, the first point of a red restriction line is set. The other end of the restriction line is set by moving the cursor to the desired location and left click again. There is no limit to the number of restriction lines that can be deployed.

A click on the Del button deletes the last plotted restriction line, a second click on the Del button removes the second-last restriction line, and so on.

#### 4.1.5.7: Restrictions - options

The C-Routes can be adjusted to avoid planning the route through fairways and / or channels. To restrict or prohibit certain passages through the fairways and / or channels, remove the checkmark in front of the fairway or channel's name, in Passages Allowed field.



The fairway / channel's name that is checked (highlighted) in the Passages Allowed field, will be indicated on the chart with a red marker.

Furthermore, when planning a route, C-Routes can be adjusted to consider the following options:

- Ignore ship draft; when checked, C-Routes will generate a route without taking into consideration the own vessel draft. The new generated route must be reviewed in detail before it is used!
- Allow river route legs; when checked, the C-Routes will generate routes using inland waterways where it makes sense.

•

- Prioritize deep water route legs; when checked, C-Routes generates routes preferably in the open ocean.
- Allow inshore route legs; when checked, C-Routes can use the fairways within the shoreline for navigation plan. In that case, a route can be plotted outside the traffic separation schemes and be shorter.
- Use default lane width; when checked, C-Routes uses TECDIS standard corridor width, instead of corridor width from C-Routes that are highly variable per leg.
Any routes that are generated with Ignore ship draft activated have to be reviewed in detail before they are used.

## 4.1.5.8: Create Port-of-call list with the on-screen keyboard

By pressing **the Keyb**oard button you bring up an on-screen keyboard. This way you have easy access to the route generation tool without a physical keyboard.

🚱 Lage ny ru	te med C-Routes				×
Rute navn	20130919 Aalesund De	enmark			
New Stop	p posisjon		ALESUND		info
Specifie	d Position	Set 2	TJOEME		
<ul> <li>Land</li> </ul>	Denmark 🗾	Info 4	ANHOLT		
Havn		<u> </u>	SAEBY		×
Restrictions	Add Dei Flere	valg	Keyboard	LAG RUTE	Avbryt
	2 3 4 5	6 7	8 9 (	) + \	Bksp
Tab	<u>a wert</u>	y u	io	på.	
		g h	j k l		Enter
Ctri .	Lock			Lft Up D	n Rgt

#### 4.1.5.9: Create the route

When all ports of call are placed in the

list, and are displayed in either yellow or green colours (or draft is ignored), you can press the CREATE **button** to start the route generation.

What has been an orange line indicating the route, now is converted in to a preliminary route with waypoints, sailing corridor, speed annotation, direction and is registered in the Route Organiser menu. Further work on the route is done via the Route Planning Toolbar before the route is actually used the navigator must check it both, automatically and manually.

### 4.1.6: Search and Rescue - SAR

SAR TECDIS has built in support for generation of search and rescue patterns directly in the chart view.

There are four types of SAR patterns to choose between, and they can be defined either as symbols placed in the charts, or as routes with full track steering compatibility. When you press the SAR button, a new SAR window opens where you can set settings such as type, start position and symbol colour. In the chart view a live preview of the default SAR pattern is shown:



This is how you set up a SAR pattern:

- 1. Select the search pattern type you want to use.
- Select the search pattern's anchoring point; own vessel's position or the chart center.
- Depending on which search pattern is selected, you now have to set some search pattern adjustments. The search direction, length of line, number of lines and the distance between lines are all adjustable.

S. A. R.	
Type © Sektor © Utvidet kvadrat © Parallell © QRS	Start fra © Eqen posision © Kart senter QRS 🕅 1 🗆 2 🗆 3 🗆 4
Start kurs	220 ° _
Linje avstand	1 NM
Antall linjer	21 -
Felt bredde	10,3 NM
Linje	
Rute	Angre

4. Choose if you want the pattern to become a symbol(line) or a route. If you select route the search pattern will generate a route that is activated automatically for route sailing.

### 4.1.6.1: Special conditions for the QRS pattern type

The QRS search pattern differs from the other because is not a continuous line and thus cannot be converted to a route.

QRS is a numbered grid where the anchor point, the start and the leg distance can be selected. Everything else is fixed and cannot be edited.

Up to four QRS search patterns can be visible on the chart simultaneously.

To remove the QRS search pattern, return to the SAR window and deselect the checkbox of those patterns that will be removed.

### 4.1.7: Primary and secondary routes

In TECDISyou can set up for fast switching between routes for sailing by utilizing primary and secondary routes. When you select/draw a route in , the default is that it is

selected/drawn as primary

route.TECDIS Then the route 1
 button in the route planning toolbar

is marked. The route will be shown with a red line in the chart view.

If you press the route 2 button and then select/draw a route, this is then set as secondary route, and will be displayed with a dotted orange line in the chart view.



You can switch which of these two

routes are primary and secondary. This is done with the route switch button 1:2.

Only the primary route can be activated. If you switch routes while in voyage mode, you have to confirm that you want to cancel the active route. Then you have to check and activate the new primary route, as described earlier.

## 4.1.7.1: Transfer of primary and secondary routes to another TECDIS unit.

When two TECDIS units are installed together and set up correctly with matching IP-addresses, the last selected route (both primary and secondary) are automatically transferred to the other TECDIS unit and will be available as Import data.

### 4.1.8: Route organizer

The route selection button opens the route organiser tool. This toolbox is primarily used to sort, search through and select routes. It is also used for export and import of CSV(export only) and LST files. In addition all routes in the route organiser are now displayed in the chart view.

#### **4.1.8.1:** Route selector and route search

There are three ways to select routes:



**Use the route dropdown list with sort activated.** The list can then be sorted by different parameters such *as* owner, to, from, and name/ID. These parameters are chosen between in a separate dropdown list appearing besides the sort/search selector. When you have found the desired route in the dropdown list, you simply press it, and then press

- a. **OK** to select that route for sailing.
- b. To select the same route, but with opposite direction of travel, press the Return button.

Use the route dropdown list with search activated. Now a search field is available next to the sort/search selector. In it you write the desired search term, and use the dropdown list (now consisting of search parameters) to set the parameters for the search. The dropdown list will fill up with search results as you type. When you have found the desired route in the dropdown list, you simply press it, and then press

- a. **OK** to select that route for sailing.
- b. To select the same route, but with opposite direction of travel, press the Return button.

Use the route selector tool directly in the charts. With the route organiser window open, the cursor changes shape to a boathook and all available



routes are shown in the charts. You can now find the desired route in the chart, and select it using the cursor.

- a. Left click to select the route for sailing.
- b. Right click to select the same route, but with opposite direction of travel.

The direction of the selected route is shown with arrows placed on the route line.

#### 4.1.8.2: Exporting routes

Routes can be exported in the formats

*.CSV	*.lst	*.txt

To export a route to csv/lst, select that route in the route organiser, then press the Select button, and then the Export button.

In the export window that appears you select export location and file format. Csv files allows you to view route details in Microsoft Excel and similar software. Lst files do not contain index lines.

When saving for export you can use file type to filter which file types are displayed in the folders. This does NOT alter the file format used for saving the file, that has to be changed manually in the file name field.

see Saving and exporting a route list on page 82 see Saving and exporting routelist on page 1.

#### 4.1.8.3: Importing routes

TECDIS can import files in the \*.lst file format.

To import an lst file, press the import button in the route organiser. A new import window appears, and here you select the file and file location of import.

### 4.1.9: Delete selected route



🗙 If you want to delete a route from the route database, you use the Delete button om the route planning toolbar.

If a route is selected or activated, then it will be deleted. If no routes are selected or activated, all routes in the chart will be shown and the cursor will change to the route selector.

Now you can select a route for deletion. You have to confirm that you want to delete the selected file. Press **OK** to confirm, or abort t**o stop** the deletion.

### 4.1.10:Voyage planner

The Voyage planner button gives access to a voyage planner window with detailed information and settings for the selected route and all its waypoints.

S Rundtur - 2	Rundtur 28 wp 6.7 NM 40 min 07 s												
Endre WP	Wp GC	Lat.	Lon.	Dist.	Kurs	Fart	Felt	Radius	ROT	Ankomst	Stopp	Tekst Keyboard	P
Standard	22 -	58° 58.984' N	010° 30.972' E	0.2 NM	180.0"	10.0 kn	0.05 NM	0.20 NM	48°/min				1
Fart   10.0 🕂	28 -	58' 58.813' N	010" 30.972' E	0.3 NM	195,1"	10.0 kn	0.05 NM	0.20 NM	48°/min				
Felt 0.05 -	24	58° 58.500' N	010° 30.808' E	0.3 NM	212.6"	10.0 kn	0.05 NM	0.20 NM	48°/min				1
Red 0.20	25 -	58° 58.237' N	010° 30.481' E	0.2 NM	225.9	10.0 kn	0.05 NM	0.20 NM	48°/min	30. 20:07			
11au.  011.0 _	26 -	58° 58.083' N	010° 30.173' E	0.2 NM	238.9°	10.0 kn	0.05 NM	0.20 NM	48°/min	30. 20:08			
Fett Finft	27 -	58° 57.974' N	010° 29.822' E	0.2 NM	247.1°	10.0 kn	0.05 NM	0.20 NM	48°/min	30. 20:10			Ы
Sone -9	28 -	58° 57.894' N	010° 29.456' E	0.2 NM	264.1	10.0 kn	0.05 NM	0.20 NM	48°/min	30. 20:11			

When you press the voyage planner button you activate a table with detailed waypoint-information. This table is displayed in the lower part of the screen.

The following abbreviations are used in the waypoint table:

WP	Waypoint number
GC	Great circle route leg
Lat.	Waypoint latitude
Lon.	Waypoint longitude
Dist.	Distance to next waypoint
Course	Course to next waypoint
Speed	Planned speed
Lane	Lane/corridor width
Radius	Turn radius
ROT	Rate Of Turn
Arrival	ETA to waypoint
Delay	Stop time at waypoint (min)
Text	Waypoint name and additional information

NB! When the Route Planner is in edit waypoint mode, the route monitoring function is turned off ( the route control signals will not be generated to the autopilot).

NB! By clicking one of the data fields in the list belonging to a waypoint that is not displayed, the chart will center at the specified waypoint. This feature is disabled if the Auto Chart Reposition is enabled.

## 4.1.10.1: Changing values in the waypoint list - Default values

☑ Endre wp □Standard							
Fart	10.0 🛟						
Felt	0.05 🛟						
Rad.	0.20 🗜						
🗹 Lan	🖂 Lane 🖂 Info						

Default vaules for speed, corridor width and ROT can be specified in the Default fi*eld to the* left of the waypoint list. The values listed here is used for the entire route, except for those waypoints where you have locked a custom value. Custom values are viewed in black.

To quickly change custom values back to default values, right click them, and they will be unlocked and available for default changing. To lock a value, right click that value agian. (This only applies to custom values, default values will be changed).

Below these default values there are three parameters that can be set:

Lana	With this activated the specified lane/corridor width will be dis-
Lane	played in the chart.

With this activated both planned speed and course will be dis-

Info played for each routeleg in the chart. This option is deactivated for TECDIS systems with Track Control.

Zone Here you can specify the time zone for the route.

## 4.1.10.2: Changing values in the waypoint list - single waypoint

Speed, corridor width, ROT, arrival time, delay time and waypoint text can all be modified for each waypoint separately, even during voyage mode.

If you set a value to 0 then it will revert to the default value. If another value is set then this will override the default value and be displayed in black. You can add values by using your keyboard, or by using the scroll wheel on your trackball(if available).

#### 4.1.10.3: Edit waypoint/route information

By clicking the text field for a waypoint the following window will appear above the voyage planner:

O ROUTE WP (id: 4) 10 / 09 - 2013 09:41			×		
tjome to haugesund	From:	tjome	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 - = Bksp		
Length: 0.0 Nm. 0 points Wn 1: 58° 56 217' N_010° 32 709' F	To:	haugesund	Tab q w e r t y u i o p [ ] #		
Course: 200.6 ° (020.6 °) Dist.: 10.4 Nm.	Owner:	telko as	a s d f g h j k l : 'Enter		
Lane: 0.05 Nm. (std) Warning before point	Tag:	norskekysten	Del z x c v b n m / Shift		
OK Query chart		Picture file WP info	Ctri \ lock Lft Up Dn Rgt		

Here you can change information about the route/waypoint.

NB! If you have selected the first waypoint in the list, you will open the route info window. All other waypoints open in to the waypoint info window. In the route info window you can enter information such as port of destination, port of call, route owner, and a general tag you want to set to get a custom search term when selecting routes. To change to the waypoint info window you press the button WPinfo. If you are in that window, you can change to the route info window by pressing the same button, only now it will be labeled Route into.

In the waypoint info window you can do the following:

- a. change route name
- b. set a warning before point, for that waypoint
- c. set a chart scale for that waypoint (enter the following: Scale 1:xxxxxx, and replace xxxxx with desired chart scale)

#### 4.1.10.4: ETA - calculation during route planning



When you draw a route, you can calculate ETA, speed and distance between two waypoints. By right-clicking two different waypoints or their numbers in the route planning table, a calculator appears, where you can set the desired speed and it calculates the expected time use.

The selected waypoints are colored green. When the tool starts, the last waypoint of the route is set as one of the two waypoints.

To exit the calculator, right click one of the selected waypoints.

### 4.1.11:Saving and exporting a route list

By pressing the save, edit and print route list button a new window will appear with a route list with waypoint details, total voyage distance and total voyage time. This list can be saved as a txt, lst or csv file.

When saved, the file can be transferred to another computer for:

- a. printing
- b. sending to the shipping company
- c. assessment in excel or similar software
  - (only the csv file)
- d. loading in to DNV Navigator
  - (only <u>txt</u> files)
- e. loading in to a TELchart ECS Planning Station
  - (only lst files)

Important: When saving you can use file type to filter which file types are displayed in the folders. This does NOT alter the file format used for saving the file, that has to be changed manually in the file name field.

### 4.1.12: Extending a route

A route that has only been partially finished before, can be extended by selecting it, and then selecting the route extension tool from the route planning toolbar. This will reactivate the route edit mode and you will get the opportunity to add waypoints atfer the last added from the previous session.

## 4.1.13: Modify waypoints directly in the charts

To change an existing route, select the desired route to be changed, and then press the route modify button on the route planning toolbar. This will reactivate the route edit mode and you will get the opportunity to do the following:

Move a waypoint	Left click with the cursor placed on the desired way- point, move the cursor to the new position, and left click again to set the waypoint placement.
Delete a way- point	Right click with the cursor placed on the desired way- point.
Add a waypoint on a route leg	Left click in the route leg line between two waypoints to add a waypoint. Move the cursor to the desired position for that waypoint and left click.
End edit mode	Press the OK button in the route planning toolbar.

An active route can also be edited without exiting vouage mode, but the three waypoints closest ahead of the vessel are locked for editing.

### 4.1.14:Merge routes

Two or more routes can be combined to one new route.



When the first route has been selected, you can start the route merging. Left click the merge button, and select the route to merge the first route with.

If you instead want to draw a new route to later on connect to a previously drawn route, simply draw that route, and as all routes are displayed in grey when drawing routes, you will be able to see the route to merge it with during route drawing. You can view the route you want to merge it with in the background, as all previously created routes are displayed in grey in the background when a new route is created or edited.

Waypoints in selected route and the one you are adding, are controlled against each other so that the routes are joined in intersecting or coinciding waypoints as shown below. This gives flexible opportunities for merging routes.

#### Example 1: expanding a route

The last waypoint coincides with the first on the other route, or a connection is made between them.

## Example 2: one intersecting waypoint (<0,1Nm)

When one intersecting waypoint is present, the result is a combination of



the two routes. The route legs not in use are discarded.

#### Example 3: two intersecting waypoints (<0,1Nm)

When both the first and last waypoint of a new route part intersects waypoints on the original route, the original route part in between those intersections is replaced by the new route part.

### 4.1.14.1: Save the new merged route

The merged routes will appear a a new route, and TECDIS will automatically reset the waypoint numbering. You can now save the route as a new route, by pressing the Copy active route to new route button.

### 4.1.15:Copy selected route

If you want to create a new route based on an existing one, a copy of the original route can be created using the Copy active route to new route function.

First, the existing route should be selected. When pressing the Copy active route to new route button, a dialogue box opens ; click OK button to confirm copying and saving of the original route. The route that appears on the screen is a copy with an independent status and can be modified in the usual way, and it will be saved as a new route.

### 4.1.16:Great circle route

Routes in TECDIS can be configured as great circle routes. This is done in the voyage planner (requires that you have entered it through starting route edit mode.

🥝 Rundtur 🛛 29	wp	6.	7 NM 40 min 07	s
🗆 Endre WP	wp	GC	Lat.	Lon.
Standard	22	••	58° 58.994' N	010° 30.972′ E
Fart 10.0 📮	23		58° 58.813′ N	010° 30.972′ E

In the column *for* GC (Great circle) in the voyage planner you can select if a route leg should be a great circle leg or a loxodrome leg. This is changed by left cliking in the GC column for the starting waypoint of that route leg. A requirement is that the route leg has to be longer than 300 NM.

If great circle leg is selected the symbol in this field will be a curved line in edit mode and dotted line in finished/active mode. The colour of the symbol will also set the security status, having the same colour code as the route corridor.



The Great Circle route generate additional waypoints on the table, which are intermediate waypoints on the Great Circle. This means that the Great Circle is recorded as a series of Loxodrome route legs. Such additional waypoints can not be modified in the table and are automatically removed if the route leg presentation is switched back to Loxodrome route type.

### 4.1.17:Add index lines

When a route is is fully drawn and the route hazards and alerts have been reviewed and accepted, Index Lines can be added for even safer navigation.

An Index Line is launched by first selecting the Index line button function from the Route Planning Toolbar, then move the cursor in the middle of the Route Leg and left click to release an Index Line.

The Index Line is displayed in magenta colour and is parallel to the Route Leg from which it was generated. The Index Line now follows the cursor movement, and while still parallel with the Route Leg, it can be placed in the desired position in the chart with a mouse left click.

12.0kn 12.0kn 100 3.98 NM SKAGERRAK 100 W 5

The distance from the route line to the index line is presented in NM at the center of the index line.

Lon. Dist. Kurs Fart Felt Radius 08.517'N 010'85.781'E 2.6 NM 188.3' 5.0 km 0.05 NM 0.10 NM 06.602'N 010'88.088'E 0.9 NM 228.0' 5.0 km 0.05 NM 0.10 NM

An overview of which route legs that have index lines is found on the route planner, where route legs with index lines are marked with IX in the text field.



### 4.1.17.1: Change index line length

The end of each Index Line, is marked with a square symbol. A left click on one of these square symbol, **enables** the extension /shortening of Index Line. Lock the Index Line in to position by left clicking again. The distance from route to Index Line is given in NM at the Index Line middle point.

### 4.1.17.2: Deleting and restoring index lines

To delete an index line you simply right click with the cursor placed on an end point of the index line.

To undo last deletion and restoring the last deleted line is achieved by double clicking the route leg line that indexline belongs to.

### 4.1.18: Display sight lines



Sight lines are shown straight ahead of the vessel, and at 45 and 90 degree angles from the ship bow, when you are placing waypoints in the chart. The sight lines are also available after the route has been drawn, by hovering the cursor over the selected waypoint.

## 4.2: Route navigation

When activating a selected route, TECDIS enters navigation mode, giving you all necessary information to steer the vessel according to the route you have created.

### **4.2.1:** Navigation information

When a route is activated and you have entered navigation mode, an information window will appear in the bottom of the information panel.

1	Route name text field	see <i>Route name text field</i> on page 89			
2	WP end / WP X	Toogles between showing DTG and ETA for the entire route and your selected waypoint. You select the waypoint in the chart by clicking it.	Tjome - V wp end DTG: ETA:	Volfwille   planno 2.0 02. 1	ed spd. 67 NM 4:01
3	Planned speed / Present speed	Lets you switch between planned and present speed for ETA calculation.	CTS: <b>3</b> DTG: TTG:	00.5 ° ( 1. 9 mi	856.1° <b>14</b> NM <b>n 45 s</b>
4	DTG	Remaining distance (Distance To Go)	XTE 1.08	/	Dev. <b>46</b> *
5	ETA	Estimated time of arrival			
6	СТЅ	Course to steer by and course for next route leg			
7	DTG	Remaining distance to the next route leg			
8	TTG	Time to the next Wheel Over Point (Time To Go)			
9	Position in the route leg cor- ridor	The vessels position in the cor- ridor is shown with red for port side, and green for the starboard side.			
10	XTE	Indicates Cross track error for the current course, measured in the same unit as the cursor range, see see <i>EBL/VRM Bearing</i> on page 93			

### 4.2.2: Larger CTS values

If the size of the CTS values needs to be enlarged, this is achieved by clicking the field they are in with the cursor.

-To WOP CTS:	<sup>2</sup> <b>190.1</b> °
ROT: 46	3°/m CTS: <b>230°</b>
TTG:	4 min 34 s
XTE	<b>0.005</b> NM

In addition the Rate Of Turn (ROT) is displayed, while the graphic representation of the current heading, is removed with only the XTE (X-cross Track Error) value is presented.

### 4.2.3: Route name text field

In the route name text field either waypoint text or routename is displayed, with the following priority:

Text for next waypoint
 Text for WP3
 Text for ETA waypoint
 Route name
 Route ID

### 4.2.4: Calculation of the voyage duration

There are two ways in which you can calculate ETA for the route

Planned speed	Planned speed uses the speed values listed in the route planner.
Present speed	Present speed calculates ETA from the actual speed the vessel is sailing with when the calculation happens. The exception is if a speed value listed in the route planner is locked by the navigator. Then the system will calculate the ETA based on a combination of current speed and planned speed. Locked route leg speeds are shown with black text in the speed column in the route planner.

The navigation information window shows ETA/DTG either for the last waypoint or for a user selected waypoint. To switch between these modes, press the EP end / WP X button.

When WP end is active, the button will display WP end. The same adheres to the planned speed button.

To calculate DTG/ETA between waypoints during route planning, see 4.1.10.4: ETA - calculation during route planning(see page 81).

### 4.2.5: Primary and secondary routes

In TECDIS you can use two routes simultaneously, allowing you to easily switch between routes when in navigation mode. When set up, you can have a primary route that is active, and a secondary that is checked and pre-activated, available for switching on demand. For more information, see chapter 4.1: Route planning(see page 63).

### 4.2.6: Notify Waypoint / Critical Point on the voyage

If a critical WP on the route is of particular interest, TECDIS caTECDISn provide an warning at a pre-determined distance.





▶?

To use this feature, enable the Chart object inspector function (from the Main Toolbar) and click on the WP where the warning is to be placed.

An information window, that provides details on the selected waypoint, opens in the lower part of the chart. In the lower left corner of this window, check (activate) "Warning before point" feature and specify the time or the distance before the particular waypoint, when the warning should be given. Put a checkmark in the box to the left, and then when point shall be notified in time or distance. A critical waypoint is marked with four red exclamation marks.

When the predetermined limit for a critical point is reached, an **Point** Info alarm is activated and the info window for this critical waypoint, appears at the bottom of the chart. Any info text entered previously to describe this critical waypoint, will also be visible in the information window.

NB: Critical waypoint warning is triggered when the vessel moves within the specified range from any heading, not just along the route. When the warning has been raised, the marking of the critical waypoint in the chart will change in to four green exclamation marks.

To delete a critical waypoint, click it with the **Chart object inspector** and deselect the **Warning before point** checkbox.

### 4.2.7: Hazards and alerts on a route

When a new route is created, or when an existing route is selected, the system will conduct a safety check of the route and generate a list of all hazards and warnings for the entire route.

you get access to the list of hazards and alerts by clicking on the List route dangers and cautions button on the **Route Planning Toolbar**. This button can either be displayed as an exclamation mark or as a question mark. An exclamation mark indicates that the safety check of the route must be done again.

Click this button to start the security check of the route, which will start and run in the background. While security is running, a reminder of this is shown in the upper part of the anti-grounding chart. A question mark indicates that the route safety check has been completed and the dangers and cautions list can be displayed.

😡 Route alerts		×
Alert object type	Depth	Chart 🔺
6 + Caution area		Professional+
8 = Caution area		Professional+
7 + Caution area		Professional+
2 = Depth area	5 to 10	Professional+
2 = Depth contour	10	Professional+
2 = Underwater/awash rock	9	Professional+
4 = Depth contour	10	Professional+
/ _ Denth area	5 to 10	Professional_

#### The list of hazards and alerts (Route Alerts) it is a table where:

 The first column contains the identification number of each waypoint the warning/danger relates to, accompanied by the "=" sign indicates that the warning applies to the route leg between two waypoints, while the "+" sign shows that the warning is concerning a turn (wheel over) with a single waypoint.

- -the second column gives a short description of the item, followed by the object's depth (if available).
- -the last column gives information about the chart database where the object originated.



The warnings, highlighted in yellow, are listed first. Then follows a list of all the dangers on the route, which are highlighted in red. By clicking on one of the yellow warnings, an information window with more info details and a description of that warning /area opens.

All the warnings are also marked on the chart display(with red markings) when the clicking on the notification in the list. This is the modality to get a quick visual overview of where the dangers are.

If the current waypoint is outside the displayed section the chart will move automatically, if the auto function is not activated.

## **4.3: EBL/VRM Bearing**

TECDIS has a bearing function (electronic bearing line) that allows you to make bearings both from the vessel position and from any point in the chart.

When the bearing is anchored to the vessel it will follow the vessel movements dynamically.

The bearing tool is activated form the main toolbar.

### 4.3.1: Bearing functions

The bearing tool has the following functions:

- Bearing from own and selected position in the chart
- Bearing slit with all saved bearings and place lines
- Cursor information for the bearing with distance and direction
- Two bearing modes: relative and true
- Temporary/quick route route with route monitoring in three clicks.

### 4.3.2: General about EBL / VRM operation



Bearing and range information is displayed in the cursor info field.

The measure unit for the distance is indicated in the lower right corner of the info field, and it can be switched between nautical miles (NM) and meters (m) by pressing it.

When the anchor point of the bearing is locked on to own vessel position, ETA is displayed, with SOG as a constant speed, to the bearing point. It is displayed in a small window at the top right corner of the chart view.

The bearing can be locked to a fixed heading by entering a value between 0 and 360 degrees in the small window by the bearing line anchor point.

The font size of the cursor data (bearing and range numerical values), can be changed by clicking anywhere in the cursor info field. When the font size of the cursor data is increased,



switching between EBL A and EBL R mode operation is not available.

The current bearing mode is indicated on the button that precedes the bearing numeric value. "EBL T" indicates that a given, true bearing is displayed in the chart, respectively "EBL R" indicates that a relative bearing is shown. Bearing mode is set back to 'true' mode (EBL T) each time the anchor point is moved outside own vessel's position. Peilings-modus for eget fartøy beholdes slik det var satt sist gang eget fartøy var ankringspunkt.

By left click in the chart, the anchor point of the bearing line is moved in a new location. Estimated time commitment to go from the anchor point to bearing point, with the current speed, is displayed in a small window at the top right of the chart.

The EBL/VRM origin point can be moved back to own vessel's position, by mouse left click on the boat symbol.

By right click in the chart, the target point is locked to cursor position. The EBL/VRM origin point will no longer follow the cursor movements. To go back to normal EBL/VRM operaiton, switch off EBL/VRM, and turn it back on again.

# 4.3.3: Temporary/quick route - route with route monitoring in three clicks.

The EBL/VRM function can also be used to generate a temporary route, with the vessels own position as starting position(WP1).

With the EBL/VRM function enabled, press the left mouse button when you have placed the cursor where you want the second waypoint to be placed(WP2) and finish creating the route by pressing the right mouse button when you have placed the cursor where you want the last waypoint to be placed(WP3).

You will now be asked to confirm that you want to activate the route.

### 4.3.4: Storage and export of Bearing Position and of Line Of Position (LOP)

To save and export bearing lines, right click on "Bearing EBL / VRM" icon, on the Main Toolbar, to open the "Bearing list" window. Da åpnes *Bearing list*-vinduet samtidig som alle lagrede peilings- og stedlinjer vises i kartbildet.



All saved bearing lines are displayed on the chart. On the far left of the window is the column for line selection. The selected lines are displayed on the chart with a bold line and text.

At the bottom of the "Bearing list" window, buttons is provided with functions necessary to amend the status of bearing lines:

- 1. select All lines
- 2. select No lines
- 3. delete the selected lines
- 4. Save EP (calculate and display the estimated position of 2 and 3 position lines)
- 5. export the selected lines
- 6. move lines individually

"ReAnchor" - when this command is activated, the cursor must be positioned over the anchor point or over the arrowhead of the bearing line, and then left click to retreive it. The bearing line now follows the cursor movement, without changing the angle (parallel shift), and can be placed by clicking again the left mouse button. New bearing lines can be added to the "Bearing list" by enabling "Bearing EBL / VRM" (left click) icon form the "Main Toolbar" (if the function is not activated). To save a bearing line, click on the middle mouse button. Then the bearing line appearance changes from dashed to solid line (fig.5. placed bearing lines in bold solid brown ). This modification indicate that the bearing line is saved and is visibile as long as "Bearing list" window is activ. Here the bearing line's data and status can be modified. This process can be repeated as many times as desired.

	A	В	С	D	E	F	G	Н	1	J	К
1	From lat.	From lon.	<u>To lat.</u>	<u>To lon.</u>	Date	<u>Time</u>	LOP	<u>Type</u>	Brg	Dist mtr.	<u>Note</u>
2	58.903405	010.571202	58.973400	010.641603	18.05.2012	12:12:52	0	1	027.4	8787	Peiling
3	59.022440	010.686358	59.033847	010.764302	18.05.2012	12:13:34	1	2	074.1	4653	Stedlinje uten klokke
4	59.000394	010.930751	58.969764	010.835206	18.05.2012	12:14:11	1	2	238.1	6467	Stedlinje med klokke
5	58.918650	010.541676	58.869900	010.760782	18.05.2012	12:19:57	1	1	113.4	13749	ReAnchored Peiling
6	58.962479	010.590870	58.918568	010.692895	18.05.2012	12:21:16	1	2	129.8	7643	ReAnchored Stedlinje

To save data from "Bearing list", for later use or for transport to another computer, use the "Export" function,. The Bearing Positions and / or the Lines of Position data that will be exported, must be selected with a tick in the checkbox.

Data is exported to the location and under file name which is specified in the "Save As" window. The file format is not selectable; it is saved under " \*csv " format, which is a text file readable in the Excel.

In the table above such a "\*csv" file is illustrated opened in Excel and some formatting are made for easier readability. The positions are specified in decimal grades and the time is indicated in the Date and Hour separate columns. LOP is indicated either by a "0" or "1", where "0" indicates a Bearing Line while "1" indicates a Line of Position. In the Type column the following is set:

1= Bearing

2= LOP or a moved bearing

3= NMEA data received from the optical sounding instrument

4= NMEA data received from VHF

In the column labeled "Brg" is indicated the bearing of the line, while in the column marked "Dist mtr." is specified the length of the line in meters. The last column contains the text that was entered in the "Notes" field in the "Bearing list" window.

All bearings and / or Lines of Position are saved and available in the "Bearing list", until are removed by operator. Deletion of data is performed using the "Delete" function and it can be done without further verification.

## 4.4: Anti grounding

When the vessel's speed over ground (SOG) is over 1.0 knots, the system will oversee a safety zone in front of the vessel and notify all the hazards objects and areas with special conditions. The angle and extent of this security zone is set up in the Safe menu.

The vertical menu includes an anti-grounding chart display, showing the safety zone at all times is fixed to course –up mode.

If any hazards are detected, the following actions are triggered:

- an anti grounding alarm starts
- the anti-grounding chart will highlight the dangerous chart objects within the safety zone
- the safety zone will be in the main chart display
- if the main chart display has been repositioned away from the own vessel position, the chart center will be moved back to the own vessel position.
- if Auto Safe Hazards is set to "Auto On" or "Auto On+Off", then the Safe Hazards and Shallow Soundings options, in the Chart menu, are turned on at the first warning, if they were not selected already.
- Until the anti-grounding alarm has been examined, the alerted areas in the safety zone will also be marked in the main chart view.



By entering the alarm list and selecting one of the notifications, a separate list of anti-grounding warnings is shown. When clicking a warning in the anti-grounding list, the selected danger zone will be marked in the chart with red markings, and the chart will center around it.

## **4.5:** Notifications and alarms

A range of situations will lead to events where TECDIS generates alarms, warnings or notifications. These alerts are displayed in the lower right corner of the screen.

All alarm and notification settings that are set in TECDIS Setup, are set from the tab **Specificatio**n.

This area contains:

- I. a warning field with large text
- II. system status field with counters for alarms, warnings and notifications. In the lower right corner of the system status field, the show button gives access to the complete list of active warnings and alerts.

The list of active warnings, alarms and notifications shows which notices that require confirmation from the navigator. If there aren't any active notices in need of confirmation, but an alarm is still active, this alarm will still be shown.

If several confirmed alarms are active, the warning field will show the text ALARMS. When no alarms are active, and no notices require confirmation by the navigator, the warning field will be blank.



When several notices require confirmation, they are presented for confirmation in the following order:

- 1. Alarms
- 2. Warnings presented with audible signal
- 3. Warnings presented without audible signal

Each warning group is sorted chronologically.

	Warning field	Alarm list	Audible signal
Unconfirmed alarm	Red background with blinking text in yellow/- black	Red background with yellow text	Yes
Confirmed alarm	Red background with yel- low text	Red text	No
Unconfirmed warning	Yellow background with black text	Yellow back- ground with black text	No
Confirmed warn- ing	Not displayed	Yellow text	No
Message	Not displayed	Black text	No

Alarms, warnings and notifications are presented in the following manner:

The colour palette will change when screen is set to dusk and night mode.

For unconfirmed alarms an audible signal will be presented through the sound source specified in TECDIS Setup.

Note that it is possibble to activate Standby Mode, if this is marked as allowed in TECDIS Setup. In this mode, no audible signals will be generated. A protruding and blinking standby mode window will be shown in the chart view when Standby Mode is activated.

### 4.5.1: Confirm alarms and warnings

Alarms and warnings will remain unconfirmed until they are confirmed by the navigator, and will be visible as long as the alarm and/or warning state is active.

Notifications require no confirmation by the navigator. Events can be confirmed one by one separately by clicking the text in the warning field, or by pressing the space key on the keyboard. If a Furuno RCU-018 or TECDIS Keypad is connected, events can be confirmed by pressing the ALARM ACK key. Several unconfirmed warnings can be confirmed at once by clicking in the chart view or by pressing the ESC key 3 times on the keyboard. The first key press will bring up the complete alarm list, the second key press will confirm all warnings, and the thir**d w**ill close the alarm list again.

Warnings can also be confirmed from an external alarm central, if connected. During the installation the technician can configure TECDIS/TELchart ECS Setup so that the confirmations from the external alarm central closes only for alarm sound or closes when the alarm is actually confirmed.

### 4.5.2: Alarm list

🕜 Alarm list 🔀 🔀			🚱 Alarm list 🛛 💌				
Time	Alarm type	Status		ime	Alarm type	Status	
13:26:43	Lost Sensor! Depth	New		3-26-08	Lost Sensori Position 2	Active	
13:26:08	Lost Sensor! Position 2	Active		0.05.00		Activo	
13:25:33	Vessel OFF TRACK	Active	l ŀ	0120100	Vessei urr Thagi	AULIVE	
13:25:20	Antiorounding Alarm	Active		3:25:20	Antigrounding Alarm	Active	
13:23:00	Missing netw. connection (TECDIS Setup Export	Active		3:23:00	Missing netw. connection (TECDIS Setup Export	Active	
13:22:52	Refer to paper charts	Active	1	3:22:52	Refer to paper charts	Active	
18:22:52	Caution area	Active		8:22:52	Caution area	Active	

The number of active alarms, warnings and alert messages are specified in the notification field. By clicking the Show button a window opens with a list of all alerts, including information about triggered time, alert type and status.

When the warnings and the alerts are confirmed, they will still be shown in the list as long as they are active. Some notifications contain detailed information that is visible when you click the notification list.

For added detail information "Anti-grounding" alert and "Possible danger" alert show its own list of dangerous objects. When you click on each of the dangerous objects in the list, its graphic representation is highlighted on the chart.

When it is confirmed the alarm "Ship CPA" will display the AIS-/ARPA target window with details.

### 4.5.3: Alarm texts

Alarm text	Description
! DANGER !	Anti grounding. Click to open list.
Ship CPA	Collision danger. By clicking on the "Ship CPA " in alarm list, the AIS / ARPA target window for the relevant vessel.
Lost CPA	Lost signal for a target that has an active CPA alarm opens. Lost AIS Lost signals from an AIS targets within range specified in AIS menu folder.
Point Info	The vessel has reached a WP with a notice before waypoint /Critical WP.
OFF TRACK	For this route voyage, the vessel has moved outside the route corridor.
	New waypoint, if this alarm is activated.
New WP	Track Control: Alarm for changing course, triggered when the warnings "Change Course early warning" or "Change Course LAST warning" are not confirmed.
Last WP	The vessel has reached the last WP in the active route.
Low Speed	The vessel's speed is below the limits set in TECDIS/TELchart ECS Setup. (Only for Track Control)
Lost Sensor!	TECDIS is no longer receiving data from sensor to
Position 1	Position 1.
Lost Sensor! Position 2	TECDIS is no longer receiving data from sensor to Position 2.
Lost Sensor! Heading 1	TECDIS is no longer receiving data from sensor for Heading 1. (Only for Track Control)
Lost Sensor! Heading 2	TECDIS is no longer receiving data from sensor for Heading 2. (Only for Track Control)
Lost Sensor! Water Speed	TECDIS is no longer receiving data from sensor for water speed. (Only for Track Control)
Sensor Error! Pos.1 Wrong Datum	Sensor for Position 1 sends a different datum than WGS84
Sensor Error! Pos.2 Wrong Datum	Sensor for Position 2 sends a different datum than WGS84
Gyros difference limit	The course deviation between the sensors Heading 1 and Heading 2 is greater than the limit set in TECDIS

exceeded	Setup. (Only for Track Control).
Pos sensors difference limit exceeded	The course deviation between the sensors Position 1 and Position 2 is greater than the limit set in TECDIS Setup. (Only for Track Control).
MONITOR	TECDIS has lost serial communication with the monitor.
AUTOPILOT	TECDIS has lost communication with the autopilot. (Only for Track Control)
Danger OBJ	Own /designated object with danger mark in the security zone.
Chart license expired Check license status	Alarm for expired licenses is triggered if more than half of the licenses have expired for less than 30 days ago. Check the license status and contact chart provider.
Dynamic licensing update deadline	Only for dynamic licensing. If it's been a long time since last update, perform an online chart update, and restart TECDIS.
Dynamic licensing out of credits	Only for dynamic licensing. If the credit limit is exceeded, contact Jeppesen Marine to update your subscription. Perform an online chart update, and then restart TECDIS.
ALARM	Other alarm conditions, check the alarm list.
ALARMS	Appears when there are two or more active alarms and all alarms and warnings have been confirmed.

## 4.5.4: Warning text

Warning text	Description
new CAUTION	The vessel is entering a new area where special condi- tions applies. Clicking on "new Caution" in the alarm list, the danger object is highlighted with red in the chart.
Lost Sensor! COG/SOG 1	TECDIS is no longer receiving data from sensor for COG / SOG 1
Lost Sensor! COG/SOG 2	TECDIS is no longer receiving data from sensor for COG / SOG 2
Lost Sensor! Heading 1	TECDIS is no longer receiving data from sensor for Heading 1
Lost Sensor! Heading 2	TECDIS is no longer receiving data from sensor for Heading 2
Lost Sensor! Water Speed	TECDIS is no longer receiving data from sensor for water speed
Lost Sensor! Radar Arpa 1	TECDIS is no longer receiving data from sensor for Radar Arpa 1
Lost Sensor! Radar Arpa 2	TECDIS is no longer receiving data from sensor for Radar Arpa 2
Lost Sensor! Radar Cursor 1	TECDIS is no longer receiving data from sensor for Radar Cursor 1
Lost Sensor! Radar Cursor 2	TECDIS is no longer receiving data from sensor for Radar Cursor 2
Lost Sensor! AIS	TECDIS is no longer receiving data from sensor for AIS
Lost Sensor! Depth	TECDIS is no longer receiving data from sensor for Depth
Lost Sensor! Relative Wind	TECDIS is no longer receiving data from sensor for Relative Wind
Lost Sensor! Route	TECDIS is no longer receiving data from sensor for Route
Possible Danger	Anti grounding. Possible dangerous objects in the safety zone
Lost backup link to other TECDIS	Error in transferring active route between primary and secondary TECDIS.
Change Course	First warning for upcoming course change. (Only for

- early warning	Track Control)
Change Course - LAST warning	Final warning for upcoming course change. (Only for Track Control)
Chart license expiring - check license status	One or more chart licenses will expire in less than 14 days. Check the license status and contact chart provider.
Dynamic licensing update deadline	Only for dynamic licensing. If it's been a long time since last update, perform an online chart update, and restart TECDIS.
Dynamic licensing credits low	Only for dynamic licensing. The credit limit is about to be exceeded, contact Jeppesen Marine to update your subscription. Perform an online chart update, and then restart TECDIS.
Missing netw. connection (TECDIS Setup Export IP)	The physical network connection to another TECDIS device does not work. Check the connection.
Target buffer use > 95% Reduce AIS range	TECDIS receives too many AIS targets, reduce the AIS area
Target buffer full! Reduce Ais range	TECDIS receives too many AIS targets, reduce the AIS area
Ship CPA	Risk of collision. If CPA alarms are deactivated, a warning is issued instead.
WARNING	Other warning, check the alarm list.

## 4.5.5: Text messages

Text message	Description			
Refer to paper charts	Unofficial chart is displayed.			
Refer to paper charts or S52 presentation	The chart is not shown in S52 presentation.			
AIS range is limited	AIS targets outside the specified range are not displayed.			
Sleeping Ais class B vessels are hidden	Sleeping AIS class B targets are not displayed.			
No alarm raised for lost close targets	Alarm for lost AIS target has been disabled,			
All time limited chart objects shown	All time-limited chart objects are displayed.			

## 4.6: Past track lines

In TECDIS you can see your past track lines (also known as a towbar), which displays your voyage history Past track lines selected with the query cursor is displayed in red in the chart view.

The Past track menu is divided in four:

The button to open the past track tool/menu is in the main toolbar. This button gives access to the past track lines of previous voyages.

- Primary pos. source gives you control of the past tracks generated by the primary position sensor
- Secondary pos. source gives you control of the past tracks generated by the secondary position sensor

Past Track	(5		
r Primar	y pos. so	urce	
Show:	🗵 Name	/Date	
	🖻 Timer	nark	6 min 💌
۲	[_		
From	7. m	ars	2012 💌
To	7. m	ars	2012 💌
After	7. sept	ember	2012 🔹
•	all		~
Total:	0 tra	acks (	D.O NM
Select	*		
- Second	ary pos.	sourc	e
Show:	🗆 Visible	e 👁 1	h. © 12h.
	🗆 Timer	nark	6 min 💌
Conver	t past tr	ack_t	o route
🗹 Allov	v, max d	ev. 0	,01 Nm 🔶
Sho	w		Hide

- Convert past track to route
- The Show and Hide button control the display of the tracks you have selected

### 4.6.1: Primary position source

The Primary pos. source field enables display of the previous routes (Past Tracks), from primary position sensor. The selected Past Tracks can be displayed with name (if previously entered, using the query cursor/chart inspector) and the performing date.

If the Timemark feature is selected the Past Tracks are displayed with time indicators. You can set the interval at which these are displayed next to the checkbox.

Which past track to display in the chart view is selected by setting the time interval in the date selectors. Here you can set up two independent intervals. One with the From and To date, and one with the After date (creating an interval from that date until today).

Alternatively you can select a preset in the dropdown at the bottom of the date field, with display of tracks from a period of:

- a given number of days
- a given number of weeks
- a given number of months

or you can select All. Time marks are displayed for all visible routes, as long as only routes from the past month is displayed.

The information field Total displays the number of Past Tracks that appear for the selected time interval.

The Past Track Select function is used to select and edit (colour change) a previous track. It can also be used to select a specific track for display even with a non-specified age.

Activating the colour function is indicated by the cursor changes to an arrow with a small sheet icon to the edge. Left click with this arrow positioned over a track, will change its colour (assuming that INT 1 chart presentation is activated). Right click anywhere in the chart to exit this mode.

The Past Track Delete function is activated when the cursor changes to a 'cross' (same functional behaviour as the Delete function in the past track menu). Left click with this 'cross' positioned over a track to deleted it. Note that only the tracks older than 90 days can be deleted. Right click anywhere in the chart to exit this mode.

### 4.6.2: Secondary position source

The field labelled Secondary position source enables display of the previous routes (Past Tracks), from secondary position sensor. In this frame the operator can choose whether the Past Tracks are visible on the chart and for how long time



they will be displayed (1 or 12 hours). If the Timemark feature is selected the Past Tracks are displayed with time indicators. You can set the interval at which these are displayed next to the checkbox.

The Past Tracks from the secondary sensor position are always displayed in grey.

### **4.6.3:** Convert past track to route

Tecdis has capability to convert a previous track to a sailing route. If Allow is ticked, a user can select a previous track instead of a route with the cursor. A new route will be generated following this track. Route accuracy (WP-density) is governed by allowed max deviation.

### 4.6.4: Show and Hide buttons

When the Show function is selected, the Past Track lines that match the criteria in the date fields, are displayed on the chart.

The Show button will appear in the active mode, until the Hide button is selected in the Past Track menu.
# **4.7: Maritime calculations**



A Pressing the Maritime calculations button on the top menu opens the Maritime calculations window in the lower left corner of the screen.

This window has two functions as selectable tabs:

- a Calculate Tab which is a maritime calculator
- a LOP Tab (Lines of Position) which is an interface for entering manual positions using bearing and/or distance observations

### 4.7.1: Calculate

In the tab Calculate you can make maritime calculations based on:

- a From position, and
- data for Distance and bearing, or
- a To position.

1aritime Ca	lculatio	าร	×
Calculate	LOP		
Maritime	Calcula	tions	
From		Dist / brg.	
38°53.	825' N	⊙ RL 0.000 NM 000.0 °	38°53.824' N
069°05.	.706' W	• GC 0.000 NM 000.0 °	069°05.705′ W
Pan t	o pos.	∣ 🗆 meter ret. 180.0 °	Pan Center
Chart	center	Calculate	Calculate
Time			
09.11.2	2012 💌	Speed 10.0 kt	J9. 11 . 2012 💌
09:50:2	5	0 min 00 s	09:50:25
Datum			
WGS 84		- WGS 84	•

If the To position is known, all fields in the Distance and bearing field will be filled with correct data when you press the Calculate button in the area where the data is calculated.

#### **4.7.1.1:** Setting calculating position to chart center

The position fields also have a feature where the position is set to the center of the current chart view. This can be used by pressing:

- the Chart Center button in the From field, or
- · the Center button in the To field

The position is then set automatically.

#### 4.7.1.2: Set a great circle route

In the Distance and bearing there is a selector button for great circle route (GC) and loxodrome route (RL). The distance values can be specified either in NM or meters.

#### 4.7.1.3: Calculation of time

In the Time field information about the start time and end time for the intended voyage is displayed. Here you can set one value manually, then the second will update itself automatically from the prerequisites of the voyage.

Time and date values are initially set to the current time and date when you started the calculating tool.

By entering a value for speed, the <u>sailing time</u> is shown in the field below Speed. Time- and date fields can be adjusted, and the time/date value that you have set will be adjusted accordingly to show the correct duration of the voyage.

#### 4.7.1.4: Datum

The Datum field at the bottom of the calculator makes it possible to translate both From and To positions between different datum.

The positions in the From and To fields will always be set to the datum selected in the Datum field directly below. If another datum is selected with the dropdown menu, the numeric values for the corresponding position value changes immediately to reflect the changed datum choice.

Some examples of how "Maritime calculations" may be used:

- Calculation of a new and unknown position based on the distance and bearing from a given position. Move the chart center to the From position by clicking with the middle mouse button with the cursor over the point on the chart that you want to select as From position, or place it in by entering values directly in the fields of Lat and Lon. Select RL or GC in the Distance and bearing field and enter the appropriate values for distance and bearing. Click on the Calculate button in the To field to calculate the To position.
- Calculation of distance and the distance between two points. Move the chart center to the first position by clicking with the middle mouse button with the cursor over the desired place, and do the same with the second point. Alternatively you can enter values directly in the fields of Lat and Lon. Click on the Calculate button in the Distance and bearing field to calculate both loxodrome/great circle distance and routed distance.
- Calculate the time spent on a voyage between two points in a given speed. Move chart center to the first position by clicking with the middle mouse button with the cursor over desired place in the chart and do the same with the second point. Alternatively you can enter

values directly into the fields of Lat and Lon. Add Speed value in the field Time and the time it takes for a voyage between two points is shown in the box below.

• Convert a position to WGS 84 datum. Choose the datum which the known position is stated as in the Datum field, and enter position values as above. Change datum to WGS84 in the lower Datum field and the position is then converted to the WGS84 datum.

### **4.7.2:** Lines of Position (LOP)

If it is determined that both the primary and the secondary position sensor fails or produces the wrong position, you can take advantage of positioning based on manual observations and dead reckoning.

In the tab LOP you can determine the ship's position based on observations made with Bearings and/or Distance.

The bulk of this tab is set aside for registration of bearing and distance observations. Up to three of each can be recorded on each recording line.

Each entry contains the following control set and information (from left to right):

- An \* button to set a record
- A check box to select whether registration should be displayed on the chart or not
- The value of the recorded bearing/distance
- Time of registration
- Age of the registration
- Text that describes the registration (eg. Observational method)

#### 4.7.2.1: Register observations

- 1. Press the \* button on the desired entry line.
- 2. Place the cursor over the target (the chart object the bearing or distance is measured to) on the chart which is observed, and click the left mouse button.
- 3. An EBL / VRM function (electronic bearing line and variable distance marker) is now enabled anchored to the target.
- 4. The observed value can now be entered into the the small field near the anchor point (distances are entered in Nm).
- 5. If a numeric value is not entered, adjust the EBL / VRM so that the correct observation value is shown on the registration line. For

Calculate LOP				
Set Show Value	Time	Age	Text	Minisize
Bearing				
* 🔽 004.00	13:05		Brg.1	
* ⊠ 124.0°	13:06		Brg.2	
*			Brg.8	
Auto 2xLOP 🗆 A	uto DR	🗆 Ex	tend LOPs	ReAnchor
Auto 2xLOP A	uto DR	EX.	tend LOPs	ReAnchor
Auto 2xLOP C A Distance	uto DR 13:06	EX	tend LOPs Rng.1	ReAnchor
Auto 2xLOP □ A Distance ★ □ 0.5 NM ★ □	uto DR 13:06		Rng.1 Rng.2	ReAnchor
Auto 2xLOP □ A Distance ★ ♥ 0.5 NM ★ □ ★ □	uto DR   13:06   _=		tend LOPs Rng.1 Rng.2 Rng.3	ReAnchor

×

bearing lines, the line should extend throughout the area where the ship can be.

- 6. Press the left mouse button to exit the placing of the observation in the chart.
- 7. If the observation was made more than one minute ago, set the time of observation in the registration line.
- 8. Write a brief description of the observation in the text box on the registration line (optional).

When an observation is made, it will appear on the chart, and labeled with the name and date of observation.

Two versions of each observation will be visible on the chart. The first version remains where the observations were recorded. The second (bold) version is tweaked in real time according to current dead reckoning parameters (course, speed). This ensures that observations made at different times can be used together to provide a position.

#### 4.7.2.2: Features of the LOP tab

The buttons in the LOP tab works as follows:

The Minimize button minimizes the entire Maritime calculations window, but retains all the keys for function selection and registered values and any DR.

The Auto 2xLOP button opens to put out two bearings immediately after another without having to move the cursor back to the \* button in the LOP tab between the bearings.

The Auto DR button is selectable when the Auto 2xLOP button is selected. DR starts immediately when the two intersecting bearings are set out in chart view.

The Extended LOPs option extends the bearing lines to the outside of the visible map image, regardless of scale.

The Move button allows you to parallel displace a bearing. When the Move button is active, the cursor placed over the anchor point for any of the original bearing line (the one that is standing still and is made with thin line), the end of the bearing line is marked with a circle, and click the left mouse button.

The Mark EP button manually places an estimated position symbol in the chart. After pressing the button, the cursor is placed on the chart on the vessel's estimated position. The EP-symbol can now be placed in the chart by clicking the left mouse button. The EP symbol is marked with the date of entry. A window will pop up at the bottom of the screen so that the

operator can enter text that is visible on the chart, and complementing information that is displayed when viewed with the object inspector. The EP symbol is stored in the system and can be deleted later using the symbol editor.

Select EP for DR is used to select one of the previously registered EP symbols as base for dead reckoning. After pressing the button, place the cursor on one of the previously mentioned EP marks on the chart and press the left mouse button. Dead reckoning will now be initiated and the vessel symbol is moved to the selected position.

The Auto DR button is only available when two or more observations are made and selected for display. When this button is pressed, the system will use the top two registration lines to automatically calculate and place an estimated position symbol. As for the Mark EP button, a window is displayed so that the operator can enter text that is visible on the chart, and complementing information that is displayed when viewed with the object inspector. Dead reckoning is immediately initiated with the calculated position as a starting point.

The DR off button can be used to disable dead reckoning mode and lets you return to use the position sensor data to position the vessel. But this presupposes that dead reckoning was initiated from the LOP tab using either the Select EP for DR or the Auto DR buttons. Note that this button will be unavailable if both position sensors are lost.

The Reset button removes all observations from the LOP tab and selected observations from the chart.

Note that when dead reckoning has been initiated using the LOP-tab, all input from the primary and secondary position sensors are ignored until dead reckoning is deactivated in the same tab!

Details on using the LOP tab to generate estimated positions and position observations are logged. To access these logs, use the DR fix button in the Log menu.



# **Other functions**

In this chapter we will look closer at other tools and functions TECDIS offers. Her finner du blant annet kartinspektøren, som er det mest alsidige verktøyet i TECDIS.

5.1:Query cursor	116
5.1.1:The chart inspector window	116
5.1.2:Inspecting past tracks, routes, own symbols, etc.	116
5.2:Conning and anchor-watch	118
5.2.1:Conning display for mooring	118
5.2.2:Conning Anchorguard	119
5.3:ARPA and radar targets	121
5.4:AIS - operation	123
5.4.1:Displaying AIS information from other vessels	123
5.4.2:Displaying AIS information from own vessel	125
5.4.3:AIS Broadcast messages	126
5.4.4:AIS direct messaging to selected vessel	126
5.4.5:AIS target list	127
5.5:AIS - vessel monitoring	128
5.6:Tidal information	129
5.6.1:Tides	129
5.6.2:Tidal current	130
5.6.3:Tidal forecast points for ebb and flow	130
5.7:Dead Reckoning Mode	131
5.8:NAVTEX	132
5.8.1:Message types	132
5.8.2:Radio channels	133
5.8.3:Older messages	133
5.8.4:Show messages	133

# **5.1: Query cursor**

₽3

The query cursor is a general tool in TECDIS, with multiple functions depending on which tool you use it together with.

In common for all use areas is that the tool gives information beyond what is normally displayed. It's name is derived from it's main function - to display extra information about elements you select with your cursor.

when the query cursor tool is activated, the cursor changes. It now displays both a cursor and a question mark. Now you can left click any point in the chart view, and a chart inspector window will appear.

#### 5.1.1: The chart inspector window

While the query cursor is active, a click anywhere in the chart view will open the chart inspector window at the bottom of the screen. The cursor position is displayed in the window headline.

The left part of this window will give a list of all chart objects near the cursor position. The first entry in this list gives details of the chart cell the objects are connected to. Each entry is marked with a symbol indicating if the object is a; point, line or a geometric area. Entries that have been changed or added through chart corrections, will be displayed with symbols with yellow backgrounds.

😡 Selected object center at 59° 01.260′ N	010° 26.470' E	×
🔷 Extrasci ENC 🔶	Attributes	
Navigational system of marks	Distruction	
Obstruction	Value of sounding	<unknown></unknown>
Wreck	Update Information	Obstructions in general
Administration area (Named)	Information	Test bølgebryter
🚽 🕂 Caution area	Author of update	Ove Bråthen
12 Sounding	Date of update	26.09.2011 11:50:30

By clicking each single entry in the list you will view more information about that object in the right part of the window, and the object is displayed with a red contour in the chart view.

# 5.1.2: Inspecting past tracks, routes, own symbols, etc.

The query cursor can also be used to inspect own objects added to the chart view, for example

- past track lines
- routes
- own symbols
- route recording
- etc

😡 Mariner object: SYMBOL (id: 20017) 2	0 / 09 - 2013 09:04															×
temp. buoy			4	11:	2 8	3 4	1   5	i   e	3   3	7   1	8   9	9   1	0	+		Bksp
59° 01.579' N 010° 29.205' E Time:	09:04:00			Tab q	w	e	r	t	y	u	i	0	p	å		'
					a s	s   I	i f	· ] g	1	h   .	j   I	k 🗌	I I	0 2	e E	Inter
				Del	z	X	C	۷	b	n	m			-	S	hift
ОК	Kartdata	Bildefile		Ctrl <	loc	k 🗌							Lft	Up	Dn	Rgt

When such objects are selected, another window (Mariner object) will be displayed at the bottom of the screen.

Unlike the chart inspector, values in this window can be manipulated/changed. For example you can edit the text displayed in the chart view for a symbol you have added.

The text displayed in the chart view can contain up to 30 letters. Added text can contain up to 4800 letters. Own objects containing additional information is marked with an exclamation mark in the chart view.

If the Mariner object window is displayed, but you wanted access to the chart inspector window, you can easily switch by pressing the Chart data button at the bottom of the window.

JPEG image files on the system hard drive, can be attached to own objects in the chart. To attach an image you press the Image file button, and select the image. The text in the Mariner object window will now include the name of the image file. The image is shown by pressing the Image file button.

# 5.2: Conning and anchorwatch

The Conning Display button in the Main Toolbar is used to display a mini conning image in the lower left corner of the screen. Alternatively an anchor-watch display can be selected by right-clicking the icon.

### **5.2.1:** Conning display for mooring

By left-clicking the **Conning display** button in the main toolbar a mini conning display is shown.

The feature gives excellent viewing of

- movement
- course
- wind information

that is essential to manoeuvring when mooring. If placing the pointer in the conning image, outside the number areas, left-clicking and holding will allow you to move the conning image position to other parts of the display.

The wind direction can be toggled between the 'true' and 'relative' mode, by clicking on the wind vane.

When the true wind direction is shown this is indicated with a "T" next to wind speed frame and so for the relative direction with a "R". The



wind speed can be changed from meters per second (m / s), knots (kn) and Beaufort (B), by clicking on the wind speed frame.

## 5.2.2: Conning Anchorguard

By right-clicking the conning display button in the main toolbar an anchor-watch conning display is shown.

The anchor-watch displays

- drifting
- heading in relation to the anchor point
- wind information

The Anchorguard feature has the same functionality as Docking display in relation to the wind.

Click the **Reset** button to set the anchor point ;the current position is placed in the center of the Circle *Safe radius* whose size is ajusted with the slider.

Circle radius is read from the display for maximum drift (highest max drift is *1000* meters).

Select the alarm mode with the slider situated in lower left corner.



In the following table the alarm display modes are presented. The anchor watch functionality has to be deactivated manually.

	Chart view and the warning field	Description
Off	6 67 67	"Off" option turns off all Anchorguard function- ality and removes any Anchorguard circle from the chart.
View		"View" option selects a blue Anchorguard circle in the chart, with a radius having the dimension displayed in the "Circle" frame and so the plotting begins with yellow plot (past pos- itions) in "Safe radius" circle.
Warn	ANCHOR	"Warn" option has the same functionality as the "View" option but is marking with a yellow Anchorguard circle in the chart display and will also trigger an yellow visual warning.
Alarm	ANCHOR	"Alarm" option has the same functionality as the "Warn" option, but a red Anchorguard circle will appear in the chart, in addition to a visual (red signal) as well as auditive alarm noti- fication.

# **5.3: ARPA and radar targets**



You can connect up to two radars to TECDIS, and display ARPA/radar targets for both. Display of radar echo and radar cursor is also available.



To activate ARPA/radar targets in the chart view, simply press one of the two ARPA/radar target buttons on the main toolbar.

These buttons are only available if ARPA/radar targets are received from the radars.

The help text displayed when you hover over these buttons is the name set for that radar in TECDIS Setup, and allows for easy differentiation.

- 1. By left clicking the buttons ARPA and radar targets will be shown in the chart view.
- 2. By right clicking the buttons you activate radar echo and radar cursor. Activation of this will alter the button to be displayed as shown in the illustration to the left.

All tracked radar targets are shown as green rings with course vectors.

Deactivated/sleeping radar targets are shown without the green tracking ring and vector.

160

The target ID or name, if available, is displayed in the chart view when you hover over it with the cursor. Shown ID number is the ID number from the radar plus 1000 or 3000 for targets from Radar 1, or plus or 2000 or 4000 for targets from Radar 2.

By clicking on a radar tracked target, a detailed ARPA target information window will be displayed together with CPA information. The tracked target (past positions) can be saved (click Save button) or deleted (click Delete button). The target can be enabled/disabled by check/uncheck the **Enable** box.

ld: 1	INA		
BRG: DST: COG: SOG:	037.0 ° 1.1 Nm 000.0 ° 21.0 Kt	Pos.: <b>59*</b> <b>010*</b> CPA: TCPA:	02.329′N 30.070′E 1.20 Nm 3.4 min
	tivate Ti A	rack <u>Sav</u>	e Clear Close

The CPA marking is shown in the chart by checking the **CPA** box. Click the **OK** button to close the window.

The behaviour of the ARPA/radar targets is affected by the settingssee *The AIS menu* on page 210 the AIS menu tab, see *AIS menu*.

# **5.4: AIS - operation**

With AIS in TECDIS you get access to displaying AIS targets in the chart view, expanded vessel information, and an AIS list of all vessels equipped with AIS within range.



Display of AIS targets is activated by left clicking the AIS button in the main toolbar.

The AIS list will appear when you right click the AIS button.

When AIS targets are displayed, you also have access to other AIS features, such as:

- detailed AIS information from other vessels
- detailed AIS information from own vessel
- AIS broadcast messages to all vessels within range
- AIS direct messaging to selected vessel

To set AIS setting, see The AIS menu on page 210

# 5.4.1: Displaying AIS information from other vessels

AIS targets are presented in the chart view as green triangles. Non-activated targets have smaller triangles, and no vectors, past track or name/MMSI number are shown and they point up in the chart view if information about course and heading is missing.

Activated targets point in their heading direction and have past track displayed, along with heading and course vector. The points indicating past track are placed with a 1 minute interval.

IF *The Ship menu*(see page 197)is selected in the *The Ship menu*(see page 197), *then* the true ship contour is shown for the displayed targets.





A sleeping/non-activated AIS target can be activated temporarily by placing the pointer over it. This will also display the vessel name/MMSI number in the chart view. When the pointer is removed from the sleeping AIS target, it will again be de-activated and appear as standard for sleeping mode.

AIS targets are displayed with distance CPA and time CPA on mouse hover. Note that Danger CPA has to be activated for this functionality to work.



All targets within range can be activated by selecting No Limit in the dropdown list for Active in the *The AIS menu*(see page 210). An AIS target is selected by left clicking it(it will then be marked in the chart view with a black rectangle), and a window will appear, showing detailed information about the target, in the upper left corner of the chart view.

If there are several AIS targets in the same position, as a result of the selected scale and/or vessel density, click the same position several times and the ASI window will cycle between the overlapping AIS targets.

The chosen target can be activated by checking th**e Activa**te box. In addition the CPA information for the target can be displayed in the chart view by checking the CPA box.

AIS mål					
LHDT	M/S BOH	US			
BRG: DIST: COG: SOG:	146.0 ° 11.1 NM 277.0 ° 15.2 kn	Pos.: <b>59° (</b> <b>010° ;</b> CPA: TCPA:	<b>)0.530′ N</b> 50.559′ E 3.93 NM 29.8 min		
🖻 Aktiv	vere	Lagre	e Slette		
🗆 CPA	Mel	ding AIS	S OK		
HDG:	282 °	ROT:	0		
CALL:	LHDT	IMO: C	07037806		
MMSI:	259153000	) Sec./ C	h. 13 B		
Type:	60 P	assenger sh	lip		
Status:	Unde	Under way using engine			
Destination: SFJ		10)-STR(SW	Ð		
	ETA:	13,	/01 14:30		
Hzd.car	go:				
Ship siz	e: L:124	B:19 D:5.	.4 m		

Past track can be saved by pressing the Store button, or deleted by pressing the Delete button.

**The Mes**sage button gives access to AIS message log for the selected target and allows sending of new messages to the vessel.

**The** AIS button expands the information window so that it now also shows details such as destination, status, vessel type etc.

The AIS target window can be removed form the chart view by pressing the OK button

# 5.4.2: Displaying AIS information from own vessel

Access to own vessel AIS information is gained by clicking own vessel in the chart view. This brings up Own Ship AIS data, with some minor differences from the AIS target window.

In sted of the buttons for activation, CPA and past track alternatives, the text Own Ship AIS data is visible

In addition information such as;

- Status
- Type
- Destination
- ETA
- Hzd. cargo
- Draught
- Persons

can be changed by pressing the Change button.

To change information, simply write in the

new information in the fields and press the Set **bu**tton. Values that are changed will appear in red writing.

Notice that earlier saved Destination values are available in the dropdown menu for easy and quick selection. Draught values larger than 25,5 meters will be reset to 25,5 meters.

The on-screen keyboard at the bottom of the window can be used, as an alternative to the regular physical keyboard for data input. To finish and closing the window without making changes, press Can**cel.** 

Eget skip AIS	data	Eget skip AIS data				
SIY	Elefteria					
BRG:         146.           DIST:         11           COG:         277.           SOG:         15.	0 Pos.: 59 11NM 010 .0 CPA: .2 kn TCPA:	00.530′ N 50.559′ E 3.93 NM 29.8 min				
Own shi	p AIS data	Endre				
	Melding A	S OK				
Type:	86 Sailing	•				
Status:	Under way sai	ling 🔄				
Destination:	KIEL	•				
	ETA: 2	1.03 12:34				
Hzd.cargo:		~				
Draught:	_4.0 Per	sons <mark>13_</mark>				
Cance	!	Set				
* 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 + - Bksp						
	CJBNM,	Lft Up Dn Rat				

## **5.4.3: AIS Broadcast messages**

To send an AIS broadcast message(message to all vessels within VHF range) or to review recieved broadcast messages, open Own ship ASI data(se above) and press the Message button.

This will open the broadcast message window, where received messages can be selected for viewing in the dropdown list at the top of the window.

A new message is written by pressing the New button.

When you have inserted your message text, **pres**s Send to send the message.

To confirm that you have received a message, press the ACK button.

#### AIS mål S/Y Elefteria LHDT BRG: 151.8 Pos.: 59° 00.739' N DIST: 9.1NM 010° 47.209' E 275.0 COG-CPA: 4.34 NM SOG: 15.1 kn TCPA: 23.5 min 🖻 Aktivere Lagre Slette 🗆 CPA Melding AIS OK Message to 259153000 • Channel Type ● A ● B ● A+B ⊙ Normal ○ Safety Send New \* 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 + - Bksp Q W E R T Y U I O P ASDFGHJKL End Z X C V B N M , . . . Home Lft Up Dn Rgt Del

### 5.4.4: AIS direct messaging to selected vessel

AIS can be used for sending direct messages to other vessels. The functionality is available from the AIS window of the vessel you wish to communicate with.

To write a message to the vessel, press the Message **button** to display the message window. Earlier messages are available for review through the dropdown list in the upper part of the window.

A new message is written by pressing the New button.

When you have inserted your message text, **pres**s Send to send the message. The on-screen keyboard at the bottom of the window can be used, as an alternative to the regular physical keyboard for data input.

AIS mål M/S BOHUS LHDT BRG: 341.0 Pos.: 59° 00.713' N 5.6 NM 010° 25.449' E DIST: CPA: 3.04 NM 277.0 COG-SOG-15.4 kn TCPA--**15.0** min Slette Aktivere Lagre 🗆 CPA Melding AIS OK Message to 259153000 • Channel Type  $\odot$  A  $\bigcirc$  B  $\bigcirc$  A+B ⊙ Normal ○ Safety New \* 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 + - Bksp Q W E R T Y U I O P A S D F G H J K L End Z X C V B N M , . / Home Del Lft Up Dn Rgt

Note: messages older than three months, will be automatically deleted.

### 5.4.5: AIS target list

To quickly find an AIS target you can use the AIS target list function. This tool gives you a table of all AIS targets within range.



AIS target list is opened by right clicking the AIS button.

The table can be sorted by the following criteria:

- Name (A-Z)
- Distance (closest vessels first)
- CPS distance (closest vessels first)
- CPS time (closest first, grouped so that all vessels coming towards own vessel is shown first.

To change which criteria the table is sorted by, click the heading of the wanted column. The selected criteria will be displayed with blue text in the table.

😡 AIS Target List			×
Name	Dist	CPA Dist	CPA Time 📤
COLOR VIKING	4.72 Nm	4.20 Nm	8.2 min
HVALERBUEN	6.50 Nm	1.05 Nm	37.3 min
BALTIC SUN 2	8.04 Nm	0.09 Nm	49.1 min
ICEBEAM	2.20 Nm	1.29 Nm	-8.4 min
ROEDFJORD	10.41 Nm	7.65 Nm	-25.7 min
CHILEAN REEFER	15.58 Nm	15.14 Nm	-27.9 min
LOS 111	13.46 Nm	0.94 Nm	-36.6 min
LOS 112	7.67 Nm	2.62 Nm	-43.3 min
REGINA III	8.85 Nm	3.73 Nm	-49.9 min
Tormo	13.40 Nm	9.67 Nm	-55.7 min
SOUTHERN ACTOR	13.58 Nm	9.56 Nm	-58.8 min
RODOY	11.88 Nm	10.06 Nm	-64.4 min
BASTOE I	27.09 Nm	13.18 Nm	-70.9 min
SKJARGARDSTJENESTEN	7.52 Nm	5.56 Nm	-2.8 hr 🖃

When you have found the vessel you

are seeking, you can show the information in two different ways:

- 1. **Right click** on vessel name in AIS target list to open the AIS information window for the vessel.
- 2. Left click the vessel name in AIS target list to open the AIS information window for the vessel, and display the AIS target centred in the chart view.

#### 5.4.5.1: Static mode

When you scroll down the list, it will automatically enter static mode. In that mode only AIS target information is refreshed, not the list itself. The targets keep their position in the list, and no new targets are added to the list.

With this functionality you can monitor vessels directly from the AIS target list for shorter periods. After 3 minutes of inactivity the list returns to dynamic(normal) mode, and the list is updated as before.

This also happends when you scroll back to the top of the list and when you press one of the column headers.

# **5.5: AIS - vessel monitoring**

It is possible to configure TECDIS with vessel monitoring via AIS. This functionality gives you warnings or alarms when the course vector of an AIS target intersects a line/area in the chart that is marked Danger.

AIS vessel monitoring has to be set up by a service technician. Contact your TECDIS dealer or direct for installation of this functionality

This function has no user controls and it will remain in same mode until the TECDIS technician makes a change again.



- 1. This function is disabled in default setting.
- When the "Ais vessel watch" is set to "1 ", a warning is displayed if a vessel's course vector crosses a line or edge of a hazardous area. The warning is not audible.
- When the "Ais vessel watch" is set to 2, an alarm is issued when a vessel's course vector crosses a line or edge of an hazardous area. The alarm will also be audible.

# **5.6:** Tidal information

TECDIS can use and display tidal information from Jeppesen's Tidal service. This service gives access to information about the tidal movements for a large part of the world.

Note: Tides require Professional+ or Jeppesen PRIMAR chart to function. Contact Jeppesen for information about the coverage in the Tides service for your voyages.

The tidal information is displayed in a separate window inside TECDIS. This window is opened by pressing the Tide button to the right of the depth sensor display in the TECDIS information panel.

Markø	r: 58° 4	8.08	3′ N
Pos.	010° 4	3.58	4' E
BRG T	108.8°	2.9	B NM
<b>-</b> DPT	H: <b>40.</b> 0	) m.	Tide

The tides are displayed for the tidal station

closest to the vessel, or closes to the chart view center if the vessel is outside the chart view. The tidal information is available independently of the depth sensor.

### 5.6.1: Tides

The tidal window gives a graphical display of the tides for the next 24 hours. The name of the tidal window is the same as the name of the tidal station shown. Time and level of the highest and lowest tide of the viewed period, along with the current tidal levels are presented in the lower part of the window.



The time can either be shown in GMT or in local standard time for the forecast point. Tides for other dates may also be selected for display. By placing the cursor on the curve in graphic presentation, the corresponding time and tide levels are displayed with green numeric values in the lower right part of the notification window.

As long as a tide notification window is opened in the chart, the other near forecast points are marked in the chart with a yellow symbol. Left click on the symbol to expose the tide data from that particular forecast point.

#### 5.6.2: Tidal current



In addition, as long as the tidal window is shown in the chart view, yellow tidal current indicator arrows will be displayed. These arrows reflect the present direction and speed of the tidal current.

By placing the cursor over one of these arrows a tidal power indicator window opens, that works in the same way as the tidal notification window.

### 5.6.3: Tidal forecast points for ebb and flow

In TECDIS it is also possible to control when the tide changes direction, through forecast points for ebb and flow. To view this display mode, press the Flood/Ebb **button (**if available).



With this functionality activated, the crosshairs for the next flow or ebb is displayed. The tidal graph displayed will also change shape, and now displays the difference between the median sea level and the current sea level. When the crosshairs align with this new tidal curve, the tidal direction changes.

# **5.7: Dead Reckoning Mode**

The loss of both primary and secondary position activates automatically Dead Reckoning Mode.

Dead Reckon Mode can also be activated manually by inserting "Lines of Position"

Data from log and gyro are used when available, or values must be entered manually.



Position is inserted or updated to the position shown in the center of the map by pressing the "S" key on keyboard.

## **5.8: NAVTEX**

**()** 

If a NAVTEX receiver is connected to TECDIS, the Navtex button will be available on the main toolbar.

First you have to select the NAVTEX stations. This is done from the overview charts.

Press the Navtex button and the NAVTEX stations are displayed over the charts in gray. Left click a station to select it. Selected stations are displayed in blue. TECDIS will only shown information for the selected NAVTEX stations.



In the NAVTEX window you can select which data to display.

😡 Navtı	exDlg						
≤ Nav.	ld	Code	Country	Station	Time	Freq.	Message A
✓ Met.	67	MAO3	Norway	Jeloeya	11/04 12:01	518	290958 UTC MAR 12 DANISH NAV WARN 121/12 DIIMFIORD.AALBO2 DANISH NAV WARN 121/12 DIIMFIORD.AALBORG HARBOUR DTHE RAILWAY BRID
✓ SAR	68	MA02	Norway	Jeloeya	11/04 12:02	518	191100 UTC MAR 12 DANISH NAV WARN 115/12 D LIIMFIORD.S2 DANISH NAV WARN 115/12 D LIIMFIORD.SAELHUNDEHOLM CHANNEL SE DREDUCED
I™ Utilei	68	MA02	Norway	Jeloeya	11/04 12:02	518	191100 UTC MAR 12 DANISH NAV WARN 115/12 📋 LIMFIORD.S2 DANISH NAV WARN 115/12 📋 LIMFIORD.SAELHUNDEHOLM CHANNEL SE DREDUCED
✓ 518	67	MA08	Norway	Jeloeya	11/04 12:01	518	2200568 UTC MAR 12 DANISH NAV WARN 121/12 LIIMFIORD. AALBO2 DANISH NAV WARN 121/12 LIIMFIORD. AALBORG HARBOUR THE RAILWAY BRID
≤ 4209	64	LB27	Norway	Rogaland	24/02 15:20	518	240906 UTC FEB 12 LLGT INORWEGIAN GALE WARNING NO. 184 2 LLGT INORWEGIAN GALE WARNING NO. 184 I FISHER AND FORTIES I TODAY FRI
O New	63	LB28	Norway	Rogaland	24/02 15:00	518	211156 UTC FEB 12 _LGT _NORWEGIAN GALE WARNING NO. 135 2 _LGT _NORWEGIAN GALE WARNING NO. 135 _ TORUNGEN - AANA SIRA _TODAY FRID
All	62	LB28	Norway	Rogaland	24/02 13:19	518	🗆 211156 UTC FEB 12 🗆 LGT 🗆 NORWEGIAN GALE WARNING NO. 135 2 🗆 LGT 🗆 NORWEGIAN GALE WARNING NO. 135 🗖 TORUNGEN - AANA SIRA 🗆 TODAY FRID.

### 5.8.1: Message types

In the field at the top left you select the message types for display.

Nav.	Navigation warnings	
Met.	Meteorological warnings and alerts	✓ Nav.
lce	Ice rapports	✓ Met.
SAR	Search and rescue, piracy, and armed robbery information	⊻ Ice ⊻ SAR
Other	Other messages (system messages, other navig- ational aids)	I≌ Uther

## 5.8.2: Radio channels

In the mid left field you select which radio stations to retrieve data from. all frequencies relate to the standard frequencies as NAVTEX and are given in KHz.



The international frequency is 518KHz where messages in

English is transmitted, while the 490KHz is used for local language transmissions and 4209,5 KHz is intended for tropical waters, but not much used.

### 5.8.3: Older messages

In the bottom left field you can set display of:

NEW	Only unread messages are displayed	O New
66 hr.	Only messages from the last 66 hours are displayed	○ 66 h ⊙ All
All	All messages are displayed	

### 5.8.4: Show messages

Messages are displayed when you press the entry for that message in the NAVTEX window. A text field opens to the right in the window, and the message text is shown.

Messages are closed again by pressing their entry once again.





# Chart installation and maintenance

In this chapter you will find the procedures for installing and maintaining your charts.TECDIS In this chapter you will also receive important information about chart licenses and chart corrections.

6.1:Installing chart databases	136
6.1.1:Quick installation with Jeppesen SENC charts	136
6.1.2:Quick installation with Navtor Navstick	138
6.1.3:Quick installation with Neptune from Nautisk Forlag	140
6.1.4:Create the User Permit file	142
6.1.5:Standard chart installation with S63 Chart Loader	144
6.2:Updating chart databases	153
6.2.1:Updating charts - Jeppesen SENC	153
6.2.2:Updating charts - S63 Chart Loader	156
6.3:Chart corrections	157
6.3.1:T&P for charts from Jeppesen	158
6.3.2:AIO for AVCS charts	159
6.3.3:Manual chart corrections	163
6.3.4:Update log	168
6.4:Delete chart databases	170
6.5:Chart Licenses	171
6.5.1:View your chart licenses in the TECDIS program.	171
6.5.2:Chart licenses - Jeppesen SENC	172
6.5.3:Certificate for chart providers	173
6.5.4:Dynamic Licensing	176
6.6:IHO Chart library	179
6.6.1:Importing S57 data	180
6.6.2:Delete S57 chart databases	181

# **6.1: Installing chart databases**

Chart databases can be installed in several ways in TECDIS.

Standard method of chart installation is with S63 Chart Loader. All charts that are compatible with TECDIS can be installed in S63 Chart Loader. Some charts can be installed easier/quicker in TECDIS, by using our quick installation:

- Charts from Jeppesen (ENC, Primar & Professional+) has quick installation in TECDIS Setup.
- Charts from Navtor (with the Navstick service) has quick installation in the S63 Chart Loader.
- Charts from Nautisk Forlag (with the Neptune service) has quick installation in the S63 Chart Loader.

In the following subchapters you will get an overview of the different chart installation methods.

# 6.1.1: Quick installation with Jeppesen SENC charts

If you use charts from Jeppesen C-Map, TECDIS offers a rapid chart installation in the TECDIS Setup program.

This procedure is the same for:

- Jeppesen ENC
- JeppesenPRIMAR
- Jeppesen Professional+

#### The procedure is as follows:

- 1. Insert a TECDIS *Service Key* in an available usb port in the TECDIS unit.
- 2. Wait until the text label Servicemode appears in the lower right corner of the chart view.
- 3. Exit TECDIS
- 4. Insert CD or usb dongle with the chart database that you want to install, in the TECDIS unit.
- 5. Start TECDIS Setup.
- 6. Go to the Chart installation/Misc tab.

 Copy Chart Database to Harddisk
 Install a new Database, remove a Database, or update an existing base with a new CD.

Press the Copy chart Database to Harddisk button. A new window appears in SeTECDIStup.

8. Select source(CD, usb dongle) where the chart database you want to installed is placed. If you use a usb dongle, the chart database has to be placed on the root folder of that dongle.

Alternatives:	Start
• Update	
Update existing Database with new CD.	
Remove	
Delete this Database from the harddrive.	
🔿 Set as Default	
Set this Database as default.	

Select one of the alternatives install, update, remove or Set as Standard.

- Select *instal*l if available.
- Selec

7.

9.

- t updat
- e if available.
- 10. Press the Start button to start installation.
- 11. When the system is finished with the automated part of the chart installation, a window will appear. Press OK in that window.

### 6.1.2: Quick installation with Navtor Navstick

If you use charts from Navtor, with the Navstick service, TECDIS offers a quick chart installation from the S63 Chart Loader program.



#### Before you begin - acquire Cell Permits

Installation of chart with S63 Chart Loader requires Cell Permits for licensing.

Cell Permits are received from your chart provider. For your chart provider to give you correct cell Permits you have to prepare and send your unique User Permit to your provider.

The procedure for preparing and sending User Permits can be found in the cha6.1.4: Create the User Permit file(see page 142) crate user permit.

The procedure for installation is as follows;

- 1. Insert a TECDIS *Service Key* in an available usb port in the TECDIS unit.
- 2. Wait until the Service mode label appears in the bottom right corner of the chart view, and then you exit the TECDIS program.
- 3. Insert Navot Navstick in the TECDIS unit.
- 4. Start the S63 Chart Loader program.
- 5. Navigate the file structure until you find and select Navstick.





LOAD PERMITS AND CHARTS button to start loading cell permits and charts into TECDIS.



The cell permits and charts are now loaded, and a progress window appears. You can abort the loading at any time by pressing the ABORT button **in th**e top right corner. In the progress window information about the chart cells that are loaded is displayed.



When the chart loading is complete, Import Complete is displayed in the progress window. The window will also display loading details. The chart loading process is finished by pressing the Return button.

- 9. Press the Show README.txt button to read the release notes for the chart.
- 10. The loaded charts are now available in TECDIS in a separate chart database.

Note: The chart loading log has to be inspected when chart loading is finished. The log contains details of all error messages and warnings. Read more in the next chapter.

## 6.1.3: Quick installation with Neptune from Nautisk Forlag

If you use charts from Nautisk Forlag, with the Neptune service, TECDIS offers a rapid chart installation from the S63 Chart Loader program.

#### Before you begin - acquire Cell Permits

Installation of chart with S63 Chart Loader requires Cell Permits for licensing.

Cell Permits are received from your chart provider. For your chart provider to give you correct cell Permits you have to prepare and send your unique User Permit to your provider.

The procedure for preparing and sending User Permits can be found in the cha6.1.4: Create the User Permit file(see page 142) crate user permit.

#### The procedure for installation is as follows;

- 1. Insert a TECDIS *Service Key* in an available usb port in the TECDIS unit.
- 2. Wait until the Service mode label appears in the bottom right corner of the chart view, and then you exit the TECDIS program.
- 3. Insert the usb dongle with the files received from Nautisk Forlag inthe TECDIS unit.
- 4. Start the S63 Chart Loader program.
- 5. Navigate the file structure until you locate and select the usb dongle.

Telko Chart Loader v2.00		
Load Charts Licenses View Logs Certificates		
Select Chart CD or Update Location	Nautisk Forlag Neptune found Updated 22.05.2012	
Conjure     Society Computer     Society Strengthere     Society Strength	LOAD PERMITS AND CHARTS	
Closed block CD-3     Constraints of the const	Show README.IXT	
About	QUIT	

6. The system automatically recognizes the files from Nautisk Forlag. Press the LOAD PERMITS AND CHARTS button to start loading cell permits and charts into TECDIS.



charts are now loaded, and a progress window appears. You can abort the loading at any time by pressing the ABORT button **in th**e top right corner. In the progress window information about the chart cells that are loaded is displayed.

Finished	Loading finished at 22:55:06	R
licence.verifyingcompilingloaded successfully ZA5N0020.005 DecryptingSSE 20 licence.verifyingcompilingloaded successfully ZA5N0020.006 DecryptingSSE 20 licence.verifyingcompilingloaded successfully Finalizing import Import completed		
Cells successfully loaded from this exchange set: 2 Licensed cells not loaded from this exchange set: 0 Cells skipped (Equivalent or newer present in SENC):	0649 12539	

When the clart loading is complete, Import Complete is displayed in the progress window. The window will also display loading details. The chart loading process is finished by pressing the Return button.

- 9. Press the Show README.txt button to read the release notes for the chart.
- 10. The loaded charts are now available in TECDIS in a separate chart database.

Note: The chart loading log has to be inspected when chart loading is finished. The log contains details of all error messages and warnings. Read more in the next chapter.

### 6.1.4: Create the User Permit file

If you are using Navtor Navstick or the Neptune service by Nautisk Forlag, you can use this procedure when creating User Permits for the rapid installation. The same applies to chart loading in the S63 Chart Loader in general.

Cell Permits are the chart licenses used for chart cells added to TECDIS in an S63 chart database.

Before a chart providor can issue **Cell Permit** files for your S63 chart databases, a User Permit file has to be created.

The UsTECDISer Permit fTECDISile is unique for each *unit, and is generated* by the S63 Chart *Loader. In this process encrypted data from your* license key is used.

The chart provider has to reciev**e your uniq**ue User Permit file to create Cell Permits for your charts.

To create a User Permit, do the following:

- 1. Insert a TECDIS *Service Key* in an available usb port in the TECDIS unit.
- 2. Wait until the Service mode label appears in the bottom right corner of the chart view, and then you exit the TECDIS program.
- 3. Start the S63 Chart Loader program.
- 4. Go to the Lic*enses ta*b.



Press the Generate User Permit button.

Specify location for Use	r Permit	<u>?×</u>
File game: Telko eT 50653 Uger Perm	Eolders: f:\	OK Cancel
event ef52020 bit event ef52555 bit odo kiel bit	<ul> <li>11 4</li> <li>5053 pa</li> <li>50553 pa</li> <li>50553 piacy</li> <li>50553 pimas</li> <li>50553 pimas</li> <li>50553 cohware model</li> </ul>	Specify the Service Key and click OK to save
Save file as type: User Perrik Text File	Driges:	Netgodk

6.

A new window appears. Here you need to select where you want to store the User Permit file. Select the location for the Service Key.TECDIS

- 7. Press OK to save the file on the TECDIS Service Key.
- 8. Close the S63 Chart Loader, remove the TECDIS Service Key from the unit, and repeat the process on the other TECDIS units.
- 9. Send all User Permit files to your chart provider together with a confirmation of which chart areas you want Cell Permits for.

Contact your chart provider if you need advice about which chart areas you should purchase.TECDIS

#### 6.1.4.1: View your User Permit

In the S63 Chart Loader, in the Licenses tab, you can press the About button in the bottom left corner to open a new window with the User Permit displayed in clear text.TECDIS



## 6.1.5: Standard chart installation with S63 Chart Loader



ENC charts are installed in the S63 Chart Loader program. The program is bundled with all TECDIS installations.

A shortcut to the program is found on the Windows desktop.

If you use charts from one of the following providers, a rapid installation procedure is available:

- Jeppesen chapter 6.1.1: (see page 136)
- Navtor (Navstick) chapter 6.1.2: (see page 138)
- Nautisk Forlag (Neptune) chapter 6.1.3: (see page 140)

Encrypted charts are delivered by chart providers on one or more CD/DVD-ROM, alternatively on USB sticks. The chart loading process uses Cell Permits to decrypt chart cells, confirm their contents against the S57 standard, and compile them to SENC format (CM93/3) which is used by TECDIS to display the charts.

#### Before you begin - acquire Cell Permits

Installation of chart with S63 Chart Loader requires Cell Permits for licensing.

Cell Permits are received from your chart provider. For your chart provider to give you correct cell Permits you have to prepare and send your unique User Permit to your provider.

The procedure for preparing and sending User Permits can be found in the cha6.1.4: Create the User Permit file(see page 142) crate user permit.

#### 6.1.5.1: Adding Cell Permits

The procedure is as follows:

- 1. Insert a TECDIS *Service Key* in an available usb port in the TECDIS unit.
- 2. Wait until the Service mode label appears in the bottom right corner of the chart view, and then you exit the TECDIS program.
- 3. Insert CD/DVD/usb dongle with the desired chart database into the TECDIS unit.
- 4. Start the S63 Chart Loader program.
- 5. Go to the Lic*enses ta*b.
- 6. Press the Add Cell Permits button.



A new window appears. Here you navigate to the location your chart provider has announced your cell permit is placed. If the Cell Permit is not in the txt file type, remember to select the correct file type in the dropdown list to display it. Press OK when the desired Cell Permit is selected.

- 8. Press the Add Cell Permits button again.
- 9. If the Cell Permit file contains the identity of the chart provider, loading of the Cell Permits will start automatically, and you can go directly to step 12 in this procedure.
- 10. If the Cell Permit file does not contain the identity of the chart provider, a dialogue will appear. In it you can select you chart provider from a list, and press the Select and Continue button.
- 11. If the chart provider is not listed, you can use the Use the following data server code field. Check the box besides it and enter the data-server code in the field (two digits) and confirm by pressing Select and Continue.

Load Charts Licenses View	Logs Cert	ificates					
Concrate Licer Dermit	Provider	Cell Name	Edition	Subscription	Issued Date	Expiry Date	Comments
	PM	N02A0404	1	X	28.03.2008	28.03.2009	
Add Cell Permits	PM	N02A2804	1	Х	28.03.2008	28.03.2009	
	PM	NO2/ TELKO 8	-68 Charl	t Loader		× 3.2009	
Installed Cell Permits	PM	N02/				3.2009	
Valid: 908	PM	NO2/ Cell Pe	ermit loadin	g successful.	Permits loaded	: 908 8.2009	
Expires in 30 days: 0	PM	N02/			1	8.2009	
Expireu: U	PM	N02/		OK		8.2009	
	PM	N02/				3.2009	
Delete Selected Permits	PM	N02A3252	1	Х	28.03.2008	28.03.2009	
Relate Evoland Renmite	PM	N02A3268	1	Х	28.03.2008	28.03.2009	
	PM	N0243620	1	x	28 08 2008	28 03 2009	

When all loading has finished a message stating that the Cell Permit

Loading was successful is displayed. Here the number of loaded Cell Permits is displayed. Press OK to close this message and confirm loading of Cell Permits.

13. The left field of the License tab will now display details of the loaded Cell Permits, colour coded by expiry status:

An overview of all Cell Permits installed on the unit is found in the file Permits.txt in C:\Program Files\TECDIS\S63SYS.

#### **6.1.5.2: Deleting Cell Permits**

If you want to delete a cell permit, that is done from the Licenses tab. Select the cell permit you want to delete, and then press the Delete Selected Permits button.

#### 6.1.5.3: Adding S63 charts

S63 charts are encrypted and is delivered oin a CD/DVD or can be downloaded to a usb dongle.

The chart provider delivers two types of chart media: BASE and UPDATE.

If you have received both and you are loading charts for the first time, you have to add BASE first, then UPDATE, unless another procedure is stated by the chart providor.

Note that the first chart loading process with a new chart provider can be time consuming, and it may even take hours.

Loading of UPDATE media takes less time. For example; loading all Norwegian ENC cells will take about 30 minutes to 1 hour in TECDIS (depending on hardware).

Adding an UPDATE CD for the same selection usually takes about 20 to 40 minutes in TECDIS.

Below is the procedure for loading BASE charts.

The procedure is the same for both BASE and UPDATE, and is as follows:

- 1. Start the S63 Chart Loader program.
- 2. Insert CD/DVD/usb dongle labeled BASE.



From the tab Load Charts, navigate to the file catalogue My Computer.

- 4. Double click it.
- 5. A connected drive (CD/DVD/usb) appears. Double click it.



Now the chart media is being read, and the authenticity information appear in S63 Chart Loader. Confidence of authenticity decides the next steps:

- A. Confidence of authenticity is high(6-10) means that the source is secure and no further assessment is necessary. Go to step 7.
- B. Confidence of authenticity is medium(4-5) means that the system does not recognize the source as very secure, and the information stated in grey below has to be considered by the navigator. If the source is considered safe by the navigator, you can continue to step 7. If this cannot be considered safe, please contact your chart provider for further support.
- C. Confidence of authenticity is low (1-3) means that the system recognizes the source as quite unsecure, and the information stated in grey below has to be considered by the navigator. If the source is considered safe by the navigator, you can continue to step 7. If this cannot be considered safe, please contact your chart provider for further support.
- D. If confidence of authenticity is 0, you will not be able to load the charts. Please contact you chart provider for support.
- 7. Press the Show README.txt button to read the release notes for the chart.

8. Start the chart loading by pressing the LOAD CHARTS button.

If the **Ignore S-57 Import Errors/Warnings** selection is marked, chart loading will continue automatically independent of the S57 verification and error handling. If any critical errors occur with a chart in the chart loading, the chart will be discarded. The chart loader window will tell you that any error messages are logged.

9. If confidence of authenticity is below 6, a dialogue will now appear. In it you have to confirm that you have performed a manual safety assessment of the chart source, and that you want to continue. Press the Yes button to continue installation.

TELKO S-63 Chart Loader v1.02		B
Loading chart cell 2 of 2046	Estimated time remaining: 7 hours, 39 minutes	ABORT
Starting import of Primar BASE CD, Iss	ue: WK49-07	<u> </u>
(4 cells have already been installed and NO2A2820 000 Decrypting verifying	have been skipped) commiling_loaded with WARNINGS (See Log)	
NO2A2820.001 Decryptingverifying		
		_
1		<u>¥</u>

The charts are now loaded, and a progress window appears. You can abort the loading at any time by pressing the ABORT button in the top right corner. In the progress window information about the chart cells that are loaded is displayed.

- 11. If an error occurred during download this is displayed in a separate log window. From this window you can select if you want to:
  - A. load the chart cell despite the warning.
  - B. skip the chart cell and continue chart loading.
  - C. Stop the chart loading.

10.

If you are unsure if S57 error messages or warnings affect the chart validity and/or navigation, you should consult with your chart provider.

12. When all chart cells are loaded, the program has to update the chart coverage area, and internal data. In the progress window this is shown as Finalizing import. This can be time consuming, and

might take up to an hour. It cannot be aborted.



- When the clart loading is complete, Import Complete is displayed in the progress window. The window will also display loading details. The chart loading process is finished by pressing the Return button.
- 14. The loaded charts are now available in TECDIS in a separate chart database. TECDIS creates a unique chart database for each chart provider loaded with S63 Chart Loader. The database is named S63-XX, where \*XX represents the chart providers Data Server Code.

Note: The chart loading log has to be inspected when chart loading is finished. The log contains details of all error messages and warnings. Read more in the next chapter.

## 6.1.5.4: Review of the chart loading log

IELKO 8-63 Chart Loader v1.02 🗖				
Load Charts Licenses	s View Logs Certificates			
1. april 2008	27.06.08 19:55 Starting import of Primar BASE CD, Issue: WK49-07	-		
2. april 2008	27.06.08 19:55 Confidence is Low (3)			
3. april 2008				
4. april 2008	ENCs are signed with included data server certificate. (+2)			
6. april 2008	Data Server certificate is provided, but does not match any trusted certificates. (+0)			
7. april 2008	Data is provided by a known data server. (+1)			
15. april 2008	IHO certificate is not provided. (+0)			
28. april 2008				
30. april 2008	27.06.08 19:55 CD contains 2065 cells (2050 with valid cell permits)			
29. mai 2008	27.06.08 19:55 N02A0404.000 Decryption			
30. mai 2008	27.06.08 19:55 N02A0404.000 S57 Verification			
5. juni 2008	27.06.08 19:55 N02A0404.000 CM93/3 Compilation			
6. juni 2008	27.06.08 19:55 N02A0404.000 loaded successfully			
27. juni 2008				
About		QUIT		

- 1. Start the S63 Chart Loader program.
- 2. Open the View Logs tab.
- 3. To the left in the window, a date list is displayed. Select the date in the list that corresponds to the update you want to review.
- 4. The S63 chart loading log will now be displayed. The window can be enlarged if needed.

### **6.1.5.5:** Considering authenticity information

In the authenticity information field, a calculated trust factor is displayed in the headline. A trust factor of 0-3 is considered low, while a factor of 4-5 is considered medium. A trust factor of 6-10 is considered high and does not require any manual consideration/assessment.

If the trust factor(Confidence of authenticity) equals 0. it is not possible to load the supplied charts. The trust factor is to be used by the navigator to decide if the chart media is authentic and can be trusted to originate from the chart provider.

A detailed overview of how the trust factor is calculated and the criteria for the different assessment points is given in the table on the next page:

Value	Text in the Load Charts tab	Explanation		
Line 1	Does the chart CD contain a signature for each chart and have these signatures been verified by the chart loader?			
+0	No certificates verify ENC sig- natures, data authenticity can- not be con- firmed!	If the ENCs are not properly signed, the chart CS is not valid according to the S63 standard specification.		
+2	ENCs are signed with included data server certi- ficate.	If ENCs are signed and this is confirmed with a certificate included on the media. This only confirms that the signature is technically in order. Since the certificate is included with the data, the origin of the data are not independently confirmed.		
+4	ENCs are signed by XXX, confirmed with trusted certi- ficate.	If the ENCs are signed by the provider, and this is confirmed with a preinstalled certificate, the authenticity of the data is independently confirmed, and the data can be trusted.		
+7	ENCs are signed by IHO, confirmed with trusted certi- ficate.	If the ENCs are signed by IHO and this is confirmed with a preinstalled certificate, the authenticity of the data is independently confirmed, and the data can be trusted.		
Line 2	Does the chart CD	contain a Data Server Certificate issued by the		

	chart provider?	
+0	Data Server certi- ficate is not provided.	The Data Server certificate is not included on the chart media, and authenticity has to be assessed manually
+0	Data Server certi- ficate is provided, but does not match any trusted certi- ficates.	A Data Server certificate is included on the chart media, but it is not identical to a prein- stalled and approved certificates. Ask your chart provider for a valid certificate, and install this as described in chapter 6.9.7.
+	Data Server certi- ficate is provided and matches a trusted certi- ficate.	This is an additional confirmation of the chart media authenticity.
Line 3	Is the chart provid	ler (Data server code) preregistered in TECDIS?
+0	Data is not provided by a known data server.	The chart provider (Data Server) is not registered in TECDIS. The chart provider has to be assessed manually.
+1	Data is provided by a known data server.	The chart provider (Data Server) is registered in TECDIS.
Line 4	Is a valid IHO cert	ificate included on the chart media?
+0	IHO certificate is not provided.	Authenticity has to be assessed manually.
+0	IHO certificate is provided, but does not match trusted IHO certi- ficate.	IHO certificate is provided, but does not match trusted IHO certificate. Authenticity has to be assessed manually.
+1	IHO certificate is provided and matches trusted IHO certificate.	IHO certificate is provided and matches trusted IHO certificate. This is a very positive sign.
Line 5	Additional authen necessary.	tication information that is only displayed if
-1	ENC signature files are not	ENC signature files are not present, and the validity of the chart data cannot be confirmed.

	present.	Authenticity has to be assessed manually.
-1	ENC signature file checksums are invalid.	ENC signature file checksums are invalid. The signature files might have been manipulated and unreliable. Authenticity has to be assessed manually.

# **6.2: Updating chart databases**

Keeping the chart databases updated is the navigators responsibility, to ensure safe sailing.

Contact your chart provider for more information about how often you should update your charts, and what chart update services they can provide for you.

TECDIS offers the following update methods:

- 1. All chart databases can be updated in the S63 Chart Loader.
- 2. Jeppesen SENC (ENC, Primar and Professional+) can also be updated directly in the TECDIS program.

## 6.2.1: Updating charts - Jeppesen SENC

With charts from Jeppesen (SENC) you have access to chart updates directly from the TECDIS program.

This chart update can be done  $\underline{\text{without}}$  setting the TECDIS unit in Service Mode.

You can also use TECDIS Setup to update charts from Jeppesen. To do that, follow the same procedure as for the quick installation, see *6.1.1: Quick installation with Jeppesen SENC charts*(see page 136) There you use the Update function.

Procedure for updating charts from Jeppesen is as follows:

- In the TECDIS program, open the Setup menu, and select C-Map chart update in the *Chart Utilities* dropdown list.
- 2. A new window appears. Here you can select between three actions:
  - A. **Auto Updating** lets you perform an automatic update of the installed charts. TECDIS will then collect the needed information from Jeppesens server by itself. Go to step 3.
  - B. **Semi Auto updating** lets you perform a semi-automatic chart update. The system will create order files for the charts you select, and you can send the files from another computer to Jeppesen. The answer files are then imported into TECDIS. Go to step 4.
  - C. **Updating Log -Review Updates** gives you an overview of all changes made to the chart databases.

	😡 C-Map CM98/8 updati	e (send email update orders to updates@c-map.no)		×
	Auto Updating	Databases	Professional+	
	SemiAuto Updating		Ubse HTTP protocoll         Ubse Network           Dewvilkad updates         Get size	
2	Updating Log Review Updates	01.06.2012 07:20:17 582 updates were received from 5	Processing 82 sent by server, 108 K & transformed	•

- For *automatic update* do the following:
  - A. Select the desired chart database from the dropdown list.
  - B. Make sure Use HTTP Protocol is selected
  - C. Press the **Download Updates** button
  - D. The progress will now be displayed in the dropdown list at the bottom of the window. A confirmation window appears when the update is complete. Press **OK** to finish the update tool.
  - E. Repeat steps A-D under step 3 for all other chart databases. When finished, go to step 5.

😡 C-Map CM93/3 upda	te [send email update orders to updates@c-map.no]		×
	Databases ENC		
Auto Updating	Service_Key (F-) 50653 PmC 50653 P+ + 56653 Pray		
SemiAuto Updating	<ul> <li>00063 Suftware modules</li> <li>52020 ENC</li> <li>52020 Pinacy</li> <li>52020 Pinacy</li> </ul>		
	Get updates from directory	Save order	
Updating Log Review Undates	Get updates from Mails		
	Maximum return email size Unlimited		

For *semi-automatic update* do as follows:

- A. Insert a TECDIS Service Key in an available usb port.
- B. Select the desired chart database from the dropdown list in the semi-automatic update window.
- C. Select which folder on TECDIS Service Key the order files should be saved.
- D. Press the **Save order** button
- E. Move TECDIS Service Key to a computer with email access.
- F. Send an email with the order files to <u>updates@c-map.no</u>
- G. *Updates* is an automated service, and C-MAP will reply within 5 minutes. The answer file has to be copied to the TECDIS, so transfer the files to the TECDIS Service Key and insert it in an available usb port.
- H. In the semi-automatic update window, select the file location, and press the **Get updates from directory** button.
- The progress will now be displayed in the dropdown list at the bottom of the window. A confirmation window appears when the update is complete. Press **OK** to finish the update tool.

- J. Repeat steps A-I under step 4 for all other chart databases. When finished, go to step 5.
- 5. Close the update window for the changes to take effect.

# 6.2.2: Updating charts - S63 Chart Loader

For correct procedure for updating charts with the S63 Chart Loader, see 6.1.5: Standard chart installation with S63 Chart Loader(see page 144) S63!!!!

Updating of charts using UPDATE-DVD follows the same procedure as a first install of the database with BASE-DVD.

If you are using Navtor Navstick or the Neptune service by Nautisk Forlag, you can use the rapid installation procedure for chart updates as well.

# **6.3:** Chart corrections

TECDIS offers several ways of inserting chart corrections.

The general method for inserting elements in the charts is with manual chart corrections.

In addition TECDIS has three semi-automatic methods for temporary and preliminary notices from Notice to Mariners:



- 1. Most chart providers include T&P notices in their ENC charts. It is however not possible to separate the display of these notices from the regular chart data. Contact your chart provider for more information.
- 2. With charts from Jeppesen you get access to T&P as a separate layer.
- 3. With AVCS charts from UKHO you et access to T&P as a separate layer called Admiralty Information Overlay(AIO)

## 6.3.1: T&P for charts from Jeppesen

In TECDIS you can, with charts from Jeppesen, get access to temporary and preliminary notices, from Notice to Mariners. This information is available as a separate layer for the desired Jeppesen database, see chapter 7.3.2 for more information on layers.

With charts from Jeppesen this functionality is only available from TECDIS SW ver. 4.7.2.15 and newer.

T&P form Jeppesen is automatically loaded in TECDIS when you load chart updates.



**∖**?

Open the query cursor and select the chart object you want to inspect. The selected chart object is displayed in the chart view with a red ring around it, and a Selected Object window appears, as displayed in the image above.

By activating Navigational Information Object in the list, the attributes for the chart object is displayed in the Attribute tab in the window.

Text in the chart view for the different T&P notices are displayed when Text (other) is selected in the Chart Menu tab.

# 6.3.2: AIO for AVCS charts

In TECDIS you can, with AVCS charts from UKHO, get access to temporary and preliminary notices, from Notice to Mariners. This information is available as a separate layer for the S63-GB database, see *7.3.2: Selectable layers*(see page 194) for more information on layers.

With AVCS charts this functionality is only available from TECDIS SW ver. 4.7.2.23 and newer. In addition TECDIS AIO Update has to be installed.

### 6.3.2.1: Loading AIO

AIO is loaded in TECDIS with the S63 Chart Loader. Follow the same procedure as for standard chart installation with S63 Chart Loader

The only difference is that when you have selected the correct AIO source in the file tree, the source is automatically recognized as AIO, and this is displayed in the name of the installation media:

oad Charts Licenses View Logs Cert	ificate	s
Select Chart CD or Update Location		S-68 Source Fount UKHO Admiralty Information Overlay (AIO), 4K15-14
Computer     Computer     DVD RW Drive (D-) V01X01     Removable Disk (E-)     USB DISK (F-)     USB DISK (F-)     AIO_S631-1_CD_WK15_14     Removable Disk (C-)     Pr_drive (\\Fraid) (R-)     Pr_drive (\\Fraid) (R-)	* III	Publication Date: Number of cells: 10.04.2014 1 (1 with valid cell permits), 1 updates Confidence of authent, ENCs are signed by H0. • High (9) Data Server certificate is no al with trusted certificat Data is provided by a known data
		LOAD CHARTS Show README.TXT Remove Installed

### 6.3.2.2: Remove AIO notices

AIO notices can also be removed. This is done in the S63 Chart Loader. To delete installed AIO notices, a source containing new notices has to be recognized by the system.

When recognized, the Remove Installed button will become available, as shown in the image below. You also have to confirm that you want to remove the AIO notices.



## 6.3.2.3: AIO: types and display

The AIO service contains four different object types:

#### **Temporary objects**

Placed in the chart to mark a temporary change in conditions affecting navigation.

#### **Preliminary objects**

Placed in the chart to mark important changes affecting navigation, that are either planned for the future, or are implemented but with lacking information. It is also used to alert to changes that are so complex that new chart editions are needed to give full information.

#### **ENC preliminary objects**

Preliminary notices that are specific to certain ENCs. Displayed with the same colors as Preliminary notices, but with "EP" instead of "P" in the name. Vises med EP i navnet.

#### No Information objects

Indicates an area on an ENC where there is no equivalent BA chart coverage of the area.



008(T)/10





The AIO objects can be displayed in different manners:

Text	$ \begin{array}{c} & & & & & & & & & & & & & & & & & & &$
Area box with fill	и 218 16 77 21 218 16 77 21 219 20 219 20
Area box without fill	

These display forms can be combined as you wish, and they are set in the options-panel in the AIO viewer. Note that when details of an AIO notice are viewed, this selected notice will be shown with all display manners activated and a red additional fill

- red crosshatched lines are displayed in the area
- the title of the AIO object is displayed with larger text

Note that AIO objects are only displayed in the charts tey are specified for. This means that a chart sheet that is in a bigger scale than the object is scaled for, will not display the object

### 6.3.2.4: Review AIO information using AIO viewer

When the query cursor tool is used on an AIO object, the AIO viewer is opened, with a separate window for the different tools and settings for AIO.



#### The AIO viewer has several parts:

#### **AIO object list**

This list gives an overview of all AIO objects displayed in the current chart view.

🛿 Admiralty Information Overlay (AIO) Notices 💷 💷					
Name	Desription		Image	Source	
007(P)/10	Test preinm LS only		Х		
008(T)/10	Test tempnm LS SS				
011(P)/10	test preinm to be updated and deleted				
No Information	n no info add				
Details Query Chart Options AlO Status					

#### Query chart

This button opens the regular query cursor tool, and allows you to view information about other objects in the chart that are placed in the same position as the AIO object.

#### **Detailed view**

When you press the Details button, a more detailed view of the attributes and attached text/images is shown. You cycle between attributes, text and images by selecting their appropriate tab.

😡 Admiralty Information	ı Overlay (AlO) Notices		
Name	Attributes   Text (GB8TDS01	TXT) Image (GB800801.TIF)	AIO Options
007(P)/10 008(T)/10 011(P)/10 No Information	Object name Type Information ENC affected Textual desoription Pictorial representation	007(P)/10 Preliminary Notice Test prehm LS only 68400797 68810501.1XT 68800801.TIF	T P EP NL F F F F F Texts F Areas F Area fill Find notice
Overlay CAIDI Notices Attributes Text (GB810501.1X Object name OD Type Pr Information Te ENC affected Gi Textual description Gi Pictorial representation Gi	Image (68800801,11F)           07(P)/10           reliminary Notice           st prelim LS only           8400797           8810501,11F           8800801,11F	1 Overlay (A10) Nations Attributes Text (GB81DS01.1X1) Image (GB800801.11F) TEST TEXT FILE - A10 COMPLIANCE.	Attributes Text (GBS/DSD11X1) Image (GBS/DOB/LTIF)

Information/attributes Text

Image

Images can be zoomed in and out on; this is done with the zoom buttons to the right of the image display.

#### **AIO Status**

By pressing the AIO Status button, you will enter the status mode, giving you information on the current update status of all loaded AIO data. Dette viser status for når all AIO data sist ble oppdatert.

## 6.3.2.5: AIO Options panel

The AIO Options panel is opened by clicking the Options button.

Name	Desription	Text	Image	Source	T D CD NU
	Test preinm LS only	X	X		I P EP N.I.
108(T)/10	Test tempnm LS SS	Х			
J11(P)/10	test preinm to be updated and deleted	Х			
o Information	no info add				🖂 Texts
Details Query	Chart Options AIO Status				🖂 Area fill
Details Query	Chart Options AIO Status				Find notice

In the options panel you can:

	T = Temporary notices		
Select which AIO objects to	P = Preliminary notices		
display	EP = ENC-specific preliminary notices		
	N.I. = No information		
Select how to display the AIO objects	see AIO: types and display on page 160		
Search for objects/notices	In this field you can enter a search phrase and search for any AIO notice installed in TECDIS. Press Enter to start the search.		
	NB! By entering / in the search field all installed AIO objects are displayed.		

## 6.3.3: Manual chart corrections

Note: When two TECDIS units are connected, make sure to perform the same chart corrections on both units

TECDIS has full support for automatic chart corrections, but the manual corrections functionality is still important, as local report on changes to charts can be left out of the official Notices to Mariners that are used as base for the automatic chart update.

An example is that the SOLAS convention requires all charts to be updated for the planned voyage. Before you plan your voyage it is strongly recommended that both the automatic and manual chart correction functionality is used to keep the chart updated.

# 6.3.3.1: Display of manual chart corrections in the chart view

All manual chart corrections are drawn in the chart with orange markings.

When you use the query cursor to display chart information in the cursor position, a Chart Object Inspector window opens and manual corrections are shown with yellow markings in the chart view.

In the field to the right information about the selected object is displayed.



Every change made to the object is

shown in a separate entry in the list, below the object. By clicking one of the entries the object is displayed as it was in the selected configuration.

#### 6.3.3.2: Enter manual chart corrections

The procedure for adding manual chart corrections is as follows;

- In the TECDIS program, open the Setup menu tab, and select Manual chart corrections in the Chart Utilities dropdown list,
- 2. A new window appears. In this window you perform all manual chart corrections, an you gain access to all previous corrections and changes to them. The window can also be displayed by using the query cursor tool.

Professional+		Lag ny Endre attributt Endre geometri Slette objekt
<ul> <li>● ● 214AI740</li> <li>● • Buoy, special purpose</li> <li>● + Added 28.09.2011 10:20:30 Up</li> </ul>	dated by : Ove Bråthen	Buoy shape : 0 Category of special purpose mark : «unknown» Conspicous: ardar : 0 Uudate Information : Buoy, special purpose/general Source of update : Temporary from 0.06.2011 until 01.08.2011 NO\1 Object name : Camholinen, Measuring buoy, 68 m
Marker	Fierne	Author of update : Ove Bräthen

Press the Create New button

4.

• Manuelle kartrettelser		×
Professional+	Adder nytt objekt 💿 Punkt: 🗢 Linje 🗢 Område	Fortsett Angre
⊕ ● 214A720 ⊨ ● Extrasol ⊕ • Obstruction	Obstructions in general     Gass/stumps     witheads     diffusers     orbis	•
Marker Fjerne	🗆 Fra Notice to Mariners Sok:	Finn

Now a new field is opened, with an object list. Select type of object from the list. Alternatively you can search in the bottom right corner of the window.

5. If the object you are adding is from Notice to Mariners, mark this checkbox now. With it selected the correction will only be displayed for the active chart.

Manuelle kartrettelser		_				×
Professional+		٣	Nytt objekt fra Notice to M	ariners	Fortsett	Angre
Extrasol		*	Database	ENC		•
+ Added 28.09.2011 11:22:52	Updated by : Ove Bråthen		Notat	Temporary from 01.06.2011 until 01.08.2011		
Obstruction	Undeted by - Ove Deôthen	E	Opprinnelig produsent	NO 🔹 Norwegian Hydrographic Service		
- Ruusu 20.00.2011 12:00:00	ohnaren nå : nåe plarijeli	-	Source Identification code	N01A3000.000		-
Marker	Fjerne					Vis

In the window that appears you have to fill inn:

- Chart database
- Provider
- Name of the chart sheet(source identification code)
- Source information in the Notes field
- 7. When you have selected the object type in the list, you can press Continue.



Now a new field opens, for entering positions. Here both longitude and latitude can be entered by typing or by visual insertion.

9. Press the Continue button.

	🙃 Manuelle kartrettelser			×
	ENC		Endre attributt	Lagre Angre
			Water level effect Yalue of sounding Nature of surface Information	E
			Scale maximum	-
10.	Marker	Fjerne	Verdi Felt for informasjon om kartobjekt	

Now a last field is opened. Here you set values for

- depth
- text information
- min/max scale
- 11. Finishnby pressing the Save button.

Modified By	Pål K. Hansen	-
	OK	Cancel

12. Register the name/initials of the navigator that has performed the correction.

#### **6.3.3.3:** Change the correction

- Open the chart corrections window, and select the chart correction you want to change. Open the Setup menu tab, and select Manual chart corrections in the Chart Utilities dropdown list,
- 2. Press one of the following buttons:



A. The Change Geometry button for changing position data for the object:

😡 Manuelle kartrettelser					×
ENC	*	Endre	geometri		Save Angre
🕆 🛷 N04E0821		Point	Lat	Lon	×
🖻 🛷 Extrasol		6	59° 01.069' N	10° 26.814' E	
🖻 📿 Wreck		7	59° 00.998' N	10° 26.183' E	
+ Added 26.09.2011 11:28:10	Updated by : Ove Bråthen	8	59° 01.044' N	10° 26.068' E	
→ Moved 26.09.2011 11:81:47	′ Updated by : Ove Bråthen	9	59° 01.187' N	10° 26.150' E	
		10	59° 01.196' N	10° 26.265' E	
Marker	Henne				*

• The TAB key and Shift+TAB moves the cursor between lat and lon for a point.

- The Enter key sets a new position after the marked position.
- Arrow up and arrow down keys move the cursor between positions.
- The Insert key inserts a new position in front of marked position.
- The Delete key deletes the marked position.
- B. The Change attribute button to change the attributes of the object.



- Select the attribute you want to change in the list, and insert the desired value in the Value field below. For some attributes you can select values from a dropdown list, and some feature a locked selection.
- 3. When the desired changes have been made, press the Save button.
- 4. Register the name/initials of the navigator that has performed the change.

Chart corrections can also be selected for changing/deleting by selection with the query cursor.

## **6.3.3.4:** Delete chart corrections

• Manuelle kartrettelser		
Professional+	•	Lag ny Endre attributt Endre geometri Slette objekt
	dated by : Ove Bräthen	Buoy shape : 0 Category of special purpose mark : «unknown» Conspicuous, radar : 0 Update Information : Buoy, special purpose/general Source of update : Temporary from 01.06.2011 until 01.08.2011 NO\1 Object name : Garnholmen, Measuring buoy, 68 m
Marker	Fjerne	Author of update : Ove Bräthen

The remove button deletes the entire update history for the selected object(s) in a selected chart sheet. The Remove button is found at the bottom left side of the manual chart corrections window.

This functionality is only available while in Servicemode.

## 6.3.4: Update log

3.

To see all updates made to your charts, you can review them in the update log. The update log also logs chart corrections.

- 1. In the TECDIS program, open the Setup menu, and select C-Map chart update in the Chart Utilities dropdown list.
- 2. A new window appears. Here you select Updating Log Review Updates which gives you an overview of all changes made to the chart databases.

		[	latabases	;	ENC	_			
Auto				Updates	)g		Revi	ew	
Updating				Remar			Refresh	Clear Highlight	
	Name	Status	Number	Date	-	IIF	👳 HO MDK - Afdeling Kust - Division Coast - Belgiu	m	
	GB300777	Accepted	7	29.05.2012 11:31			<ul> <li>HO Directorate of Hydrography and Navigation</li> </ul>	1 (DHN) - Brazil	
	GB300813	Accepted	4	29.05.2012 11:31		Ш	e-HO The Navigation Guarantee Department of the Chinese Navy Headquarters	he Chinese Navy Headquarters	
SemiAuto	GB300813	Accepted	5	29.05.2012 11:31	-	Ш	•• HO Canadian Hydrographic Service (CHS)		
opuality	GB300813	Accepted	6	29.05.2012 11:31		Ш	Ho Servicio Hidrográfico y Oceanográfico de la US Ministerio do Pañaso Maximul, Oslambia	Armada (SHOA) - Chile	
	GB301076	Accepted	2	29.05.2012 11:31		Ho Ministerio de Defensa Nacional - Colombia     Ho Bundesant für Seeschiffahrt und Hydrogaphie (BSH) - Germany     Ho Kert On Mateilia Handler Alexander (Mateilia)			
	GB301119	Accepted	2	29.05.2012 11:31			ipile (Don) - Gernially N		
Uodatino Loo	GB301119	Accepted	3	29.05.2012 11:31			HO Fstonian Maritime Administration (FMA)	n	
eview Updates	GB301148	Accepted	7	29.05.2012 11:31		• HO Instituto Hidrográfico de la Marina (IHM) - Spain			
	6B301148	Accented	8	29.05.2012.11-31	-	v v v			

- To see the update log do the following:
  - A. Select the desired chart database in the dropdown list
  - B. The field Updates Log now displays a list of all updated that have been added.
    - Name, Status, Number and Date are all shown for each update.
    - The Status column will either contain Accepted or Rejected.
    - De oppdateringene som er Rejected har blitt avvist eller fjernet. If the Remark button is active, an update note will be displayed by pressing it.
  - C. The Review field contains a tree structure of all the chart updates, sorted under the update publisher, chart sheet and book number where the correction was published
    - Under each book number you will find information in cue-form about all changes objects
    - Point objects are marked with a red circle in the charts, lines are draw in red, and areas are cross-hatched in red.
    - By double clicking on an object in the list the chart view will move to that object, and it will be marked in red.
    - Under each book number you will find information in cue-form about all changed objects.

- Point objects are marked with a red circle in the charts, lines are draw in red, and areas are cross-hatched in red.
- D. When a new CD from C-Map is isntalled, all previous updates will be removed.
- E. Manual rejection of updates:
  - Left click the desired update in the list, and then right click it. Select Reject Update.
- 4. Close the update log window for the changes to take effect.

# **6.4: Delete chart databases**

Chart databases are deleted/removed in the C-Map Chart Manager program. This program is accessed by opening TECDIS Setup.

#### Do the following:

- 1. Insert a TECDIS *Service Key* in an available usb port in the TECDIS unit.
- 2. Wait until the text label Servicemode appears in the lower right corner of the chart view.
- 3. Exit TECDIS
- 4. Start TECDIS Setup.
- 5. Go to the Chart installation/Misc tab.
- 6. Press the Start C-Map Chart Manager button. The C-Map Chart Manager program starts.
- 7. Select the database you want to delete by clicking on the entry for it in the Registered databases table.
- 8. Press the Unregister database button. The database is now deleted.
- 9. Close C-Map Chart Manager and TECDIS Setup.
- 10. Start the TECDIS program.

# **6.5: Chart Licenses**

Туре	Supplier/base name	ΤοοΙ
Jeppesen SENC	Jeppesen PRIMAR, ENC and Pro- fessional+	These use license keys that are admin- istered in TECDIS <b>Setup</b> , or in C- <b>Map</b> <b>Chart Manager.</b>
S63	Navtor, Nautisk Forlag, and others	These use Cell Permits for licensing. This is administered in <b>S63 Chart</b> <b>Loader</b> .
S57		These do not use any form of licensing. The charts are loaded in S63 Chart Loader.

There are several ways to administrate chart licenses in TECDIS.

- Read more a6.1.5: Standard chart installation with S63 Chart Loader (see page 144)rmits in cha**pter** Standard chart installation with S63 Chart Loader.
- Read more a6.5.2: Chart licenses Jeppesen SENC(see page 172) chapter **Ch**art licenses Jeppesen SENC.

# **6.5.1: View your chart licenses in the TECDIS**

## program.

Chart licenses are viewed in TECDIS by going to the menu tabs. Here you select the Setup menu tab.

There yo<u>u will</u> find a *dropdown list* called Chart U*tilities*. In that list, select Ch**eck licenses.** 

A new window appears, and displays a list of all chart licenses entered in the TECDIS system.

 Licenses with a green background are valid more than 14 days beyond today.

😡 Lisence list					
All 3 licenses are valid for more than 14 days !					
Chart DB	Chart	Expires			
ENC	Zone O ENC	01.11.2012			
Professional+	Zone O	01.11.2012			
Professional+	Supp Pinacy	01.11.2012			

- Licenses with a yellow background will expire within the next 14 days.
- Licenses with a red background are expired.

# 6.5.2: Chart licenses - Jeppesen SENC

All functionality described in this chapter is valid for chart databases in the CM93/3 format distributed by Jeppesen(C-Map). For chart databases in other formats (S63), see chapter *6.5: Chart Licenses* (see page 171) for more information.

Licenses for Jeppesen SENC is administered from the TECDIS Setup program.

#### 6.5.2.1: Adding a chart license

#### To add a chart license, do the following:

- 1. Insert a TECDIS *Service Key* in an available usb port in the TECDIS unit.
- 2. Wait until the text label Servicemode appears in the lower right corner of the chart view.
- 3. Exit TECDIS
- 4. Insert CD or usb dongle with the chart license(s) received from Jeppesen in the TECDIS unit. If you have received a license code instead of a license file, skip this part.
- 5. Start TECDIS Setup.
- 6. Go to the Licenses tab.
  - 1. If you have received a license file, continue to the next step.
  - 2. If you have received a license code, skip to part 10
- 7. Press the Add license from file button.
- 8. This opens a new window, where you navigate to the location of the license file (password.usr). Select the file, and confirm adding it by pressing the OK button.
- 9. All chart licenses for all chart databases and all areas included in your purchased license, is now activated. You have now finished adding the license. If more licenses are to be added, repeat the procedure.
- 10. Press the Add licenses manually button.
- 11. The field to the right og the button is now opened and you can now set:
  - 1. The chart database for the license you want to add in the Databases dropdown list.
  - 2. Chart areas for the license you want to add in the Data Set or Area Name.
- 12. Enter the received license code in the License String field.
- 13. Press the **All Licens**e button.
- 14. Repeat this process for each chart area and each license code in each chart database.

#### **6.5.2.2:** Administrating the chart licenses

The other functions in the Licensing tab helps you in administering your Jeppesen SENC licenses.

The Get expired licenses button gives you access to an overview of all licenses that has expired within a selected date (month and year).

**The Licenses** list button gives you access to a list of valid licenses, sorted by chart database.

**The License o**rder button gives you access to a tool for easy generation of a license order summary that you can send to Jeppesen.

## 6.5.3: Certificate for chart providers

Certificates are used by the S63 Chart Loader to verify signatures and authenticity of chart cells and chart media.

Two certificates, from IHO and Primar, are preinstalled in TECDIS. If charts from other hydrographic offices/chart providers are to be used, it is strongly advised that the certificate from the chart provider is installed before you start the chart loading process.

S63 Chart Loader requires two files to install a certificate:

- a\*.CRT certificate file
- a \*.txt public license key file

These files should be acquired from your chart provider. They should both be named with the chart providers name in capital letters.

Use the following procedure to load the certificates:

- 1. Place the certificate files from the chart provider in a TECDIS Service Key and insert it in a free usb port.
- 2. Start TECDIS to Windows desktop (Service Mode).
- 3. Start the S63 Chart Loader program.
- 4. Go to the Certificates tab.



view of all installed certificates is shown in the left column. To load a new certificate, press the Load Certificate button.



A new window appears. Here you select the correct location for your certificate. At this point it is the \*.CRT file you should select.

7. Press the OK button.

5.

6.

 If the system finds a public license key file in the same folder as the \*.CRT file you just selected, this is installed automatically. If not, you will receive a message about this, and you have to find the file manually. If so, repeat steps 6 and 7, but select file type \*.txt.



When both files are loaded, and the system recognizes the certificate and public license key as valid, a confirmation is shown. Press the **O**K button.

istalled Certificates	Certificate Contents	MATCHES	Public Key Text Fi
d Rimar	// BFC p FCA6 82CE 8812 CABA 26EF / B4A2 00F3 ABL6 1/AR 0.F3 Ch13 2ACF 50D9 9151 BFC4 // BFC q 962E DDCC 359C BABE BE26 / // BFC q 962E DDCC 359C BABE BE26 / // BFC q 6633 1A27 1A57 2644E B91A - 6633 1A27 1A57 2644 A000 A20A 6644 / / BFC y 963F 1432 2BAS 3729 20F2 -	CCF7 1108 5260 B070 B058 D8CB CD18 B301 A473 6596 3413 6531 2800 8999 B47 375 2142 D186 B6A1 2609 3461 3655. 4565 1479 D181 3452 4970 5483 4564 B871 8779 DA13 3059 B321 2935 6308 B880 B879 4624.	// BIG p
Trust Selected	564D B959 95B1 5CF8 8008 1 79F0 C4F4 926B 1776 1CC8 1	D548 3548 6788 2889 5978 1582 6980 9887 7098 7898.	// BIG y 963F 14E3 2BA5 3729 28F2 4F15 B073 0C49 D31B 28E5 C764 1002 564D B959 95B1 SCF8 200E D54E 3548 67B8
Delete Selected			2889 5978 1582 6980 7990 C494 9268 1776 1008 9887 7098 7898.
Load Certificate			

tificate information is now displayed in the S63 Chart Loader, and authenticity confirmation remains. When the contents of the columns Certificate contents and Public key text file match, they are shown with green backgrounds. A confirmation of <u>100% match</u> is displayed when the text MATCHES over the columns turn green.



When you are confident of the authenticity of the certificate, either through the information matching, or through contact with the certificate issuer, you can press the Trust selected button to the left in the window. By pressing you confirm that the certificate can be used to approve S63 charts for loading.

12. Press OK

10.

13. The certificate loading is now completed.

## 6.5.4: Dynamic Licensing

Dynamic licensing function in TECDIS includes full support for "Jeppesen Marine Dynamic Licensing" for ENC and JeppesenPRIMAR charts in C-MAP SENC format.

Dynamic licensing provides a cost effective method to ensure a continuous ENC chart coverage with minimal administrative costs.

Dynamic licensing is a subscription agreement between the vessel operator and Jeppesen Marine, which provides instant access to charts within the subscription limits.

Vessel operator doesn't supports any cost at the time of subscription to dynamic licensing. However, the vessel gets immediate access to all charts within the subscription restrictions, for use of route planning or actual voyage, without specifying any license codes..

### 6.5.4.1: Credit Limit

To prevent uncontrolled license costs, the subscription include an annual credit limit based on estimated annual costs for the vessel. When a chart is used by TECDIS system, the chart licensing cost is charged within the subscription and the remaining credit is reduced accordingly.

The credit limit can be extended if necessary.

### 6.5.4.2: Automatic Licensing

When a new chart is needeed (accordingly with the vessel's voyage), TECDIS enables immediately a three-month license for that chart.

If the vessel needs again the same chart after this period, a new 3 month license active. This means that a chart subscriptions is charged from the time the vessel actually need the chart, with a 3 month license period.

#### 6.5.4.3: Reporting user

The active chart licenses are automatically reported back to Jeppesen Marine, when "Auto Updating" or "Semi Auto Updating" functions, in "C-MAP chart update" option in the "Setup" menu, is used to download chart updates for ENC or JeppesenPRIMAR-charts.

So, to update a chart is a necessary for the 'paperless navigation' and involves no extra work for the navigators..

#### 6.5.4.4: Billing

Based on the actual chart use, Jeppesen Marine will charge the vessel operator for accrued chart license.

This can either be done at regular intervals, or when the total outstanding amount exceeds the credit limit defined in the Subscription Agreement.

All matters relating charts, licensing of charts and chart subscriptions is between Jeppesen Marine and vessel operator.

### 6.5.4.5: Use of Dynamic Licensing in TECDIS

After Dynamic Licensing agreement draft between Jeppesen Marine and ship operator, the function is automatically enabled in TECDIS when then next chart update is completed.

The chart is automatically licensed within a specified distance from your vessel. This ensures chart coverage in the vessel's current position and that the route planning or fake chart requests do not result in Chart License costs.

The status of the Dynamic License (credit limit, last usage report and the next reporting date) can be monitored by opening the "License list" in "Check chart licenses" option in the "Setup"

S Lisence list 🗙					
1 dynamic lice	nses D	Dynamic Licensing Range (NM) 5			
Chart DB	Chart	Expires			
ENC	Zone O DynL	ic Dynamic			

menu and click on the dynamic license entry in the list.

Once the credit limit is lower than 200 "credits" or the deadline for the next reporting is less than 3 days, TECDIS will issue a warning about this. Lists of chart dynamic license (both reported and unreported) opens the "C-Map Chart Manager" started from "Chart Installation / Misc" folder in TECDIS Setup.

## 6.5.4.6: Adjustment for automatic ENC licensing

Adjustment for automatic ENC Licensing is performed in "License list." With "TECDIS Service Key" connected, by opening this window is it possible to adjust the threshold value "Dynamic Licensing Range (NM)" (see illustration above).

### 6.5.4.7: Route Planning using ENC diagrams

Since only chart within a given distance is licensed automatically in the default mode, it is possible to plan a voyage, in advance, without being charged for extra chart license costs.

When it is determined that the voyage will take place, the route should be checked against the charts to meet the government requirements for 'paperless navigation'.

"TECDIS Service Key" is required to license a chart outside the parameters which are set in the "Dynamic Licensing Range (NM)." When "TECDIS Service Key" is pluged in a USB port, a "Payment" button will be available in the "Chart" folder in the "Menu" folder. By clicking this button activates the payment mode.

In the payment mode, all <u>requested</u> chart cells are licensed, including outside "Dynamic Licensing Range (NM)."

A clear warning is displayed on the screen to show that the payment mode for the chart opening, is active.

A route check can now be performed and all hazards / precautions from the charts will be displayed. The route can also be adjusted manually using the charts.

When route check is performed, the payment mode is disabled either by clicking the "Checkout" button again, or by removing the "TECDIS Service Key".



# 6.6: IHO Chart library

The Chart library selection in the Chart Utilities opens a chart library window displaying an overview of installed chart databases in the TECDIS computer.



By selecting a database from the dropdown list , a list of all licensed charts is opened, and it is sorted by hydrographic organisations.

Select a chart in the list to get access to more information. This information is displayed in the middle field.

By double clicking a chart in the list, it will be displayed in the chart view if it is licensed. If own vessel is moving, the chart view will automatically be changed back to the vessel (unless Auto is turned off)

Note: The chart library only displays the chart databases selected for viewing in the setup menu tab.

To the right in the chart library window you find the Chart boundaries function. This draws rectangles outlining the charts in the database for the selected scale.

The scales match the overview chart scale and the A-G scales on the main toolbar.

- Licensed charts are outlined with a magenta line
- Unlicensed charts are outlined with a black line

The name of the chart is displayed in the bottom left corner of its rectangle.

## 6.6.1: Importing S57 data

Note: When two TECDIS units are connected, make sure both units are updated simultaneously.

An S-57 database consists of datasets (chart sheets). ENC data is sold as ENC cells in S57 format, and when these are imported to a database, each ENC cell is converted to a dataset.

This process involves two steps:

- 1. Verification (validity check)
- 2. Compilation (convert ENC cell to dataset)

Import of s57 data is done in the chart library. Use the following procedure:

- 1. Select chart database in the dropdown list.
- 2. Click the Import S57 button A folder structure is displayed.
- 3. Select the drive you want to collect data from in the Import S57 data from.. field. Data is imported to a database named with the prefix S57.
  - If no S57 database exist, a new one is automatically made. Create a new s57 database manually by clicking the Create new Database but-

Enter a name for	r the new Database:
(\$57	1
Ok	Cancel

ton. You can now enter a name for the new base.

- The S57 database will automatically be added and selected for display in the Setup menu.
- 4. When the drive containing the data is selected, the Start button becomes available. Click the Start button to initiate import. The data is verified automatically.

If errors occur, am S57 Error Report appears. Here it is shown which imported file the error applies to, and if the error is critical or noncritical. Files with critical errors are not imported. Files with noncritical errors (potential irregularities of data) can be manually imported or rejected, by clicking Continue or Skip.

5. The import process can be cancelled by clicking the Stop button. If the Disable error report option is selected before data import is started, the entire import process goes automatically. S57 import files with critical errors will be omitted, while files with non-critical errors are imported.
NB: When using the Disable error report, there is no possibility to see detailed information about the causes and error of ENC cells that cannot be imported.

- 6. An import log will be created. This log can also be viewed by selecting the appropriate dataset in the Chart Library by scrolling down to the S57 import log in the information field.
- 7. If there are imported chart updates in S57 format, these can be viewed in C-MAP chart update, under Updating log review updates. Read more in *6.2.1: Updating charts Jeppesen SENC*(see page 153).
- 8. 6.2.1: Updating charts Jeppesen SENC(see page 153)
  - 6.2.1: Updating charts Jeppesen SENC(see page 153)
  - 6.2.1: Updating charts Jeppesen SENC(see page 153)

#### 6.6.2: Delete S57 chart databases

In a database containing imported S57 data is selected in the dropdown list, the Remove Dataset button will delete the selected chart.



# System settings

In this chapter we will look closer at the various system settings that can be set in the TECDIS program.

7.1:Settings menu	
7.2:The Setup menu	
7.2.1:Ship draught	
7.2.2:Language	
7.2.3:Time zone adjustment	
7.2.4:NMEA input status	
7.2.5:Navigation position offset	
7.2.6:Chart utilities	
7.2.7:Installed Charts on the computer	
7.2.8:Alarm volume	
7.2.9:Auxilary	191
7.3:The Chart menu	
7.3.1:Chart information	
7.3.2:Selectable layers	
7.3.3:Chart presentation	
7.3.4:Overview of available chart information	
7.3.5:Chart data information	
7.4:The Ship menu	
7.4.1:Ship symbol offcenter	
7.4.2:Auto sensitivity	
7.4.3:Viewing the double circle	
7.4.4:View vessel contour	197
7.4.5:Course vector	
7.4.6:ROT curved	
7.4.7:Auto route activation	
7.4.8:Wheelover	
7.5:The Data menu	
7.5.1:Function	
7.5.2:Restrict selection - time/area	
7.5.3:Restrict selection - data type	
7.5.4:Execute	
7.5.5:Importing primary and secondary routes	
7.5.6:Route synchronisation	

3
3
4
5
5
5
6
6
7
8
8
9
0
0
0
1
2
2
3

# 7.1: Settings menu

By clicking the settings menu-button on the main toolbar, a collection of menu tabs will be displayed in the lower part of the information window. There are 7 different menu tabs:

• Setup

- Charts
- Ship
- Data
- Log
- Safe
- AIS

and only one is shown at a a time. A menu tab is selected by clicking its tab heading.

If you want to hide the Settings menu again, click once on the Settings menu-button on the main toolbar, or remove the pointer from the Settings menu area.

## 7.2: The Setup menu

In the Setup menu several generic settings are controlled. The Setup menu contains:



- 1. Ship draught
- 2. Language
- 3. Time zone adjustment
- 4. NMEA input status
- 5. Navigation position offset
- 6. Chart utilities (dropdown menu)
- Chart library field (control which chart databases are viewed and the version number for the available chart databases)
- Alarm volume adjustment bar (only available when alarm is set to speaker or keyboard in TECDIS Setup)
- 9. Auxilary (dropdown menu):
- 10. Scroll wheel zoom
- 11. Display help text (see chapter 1)

The dropdown menu chart utilities contains:

- 1. IHO Chart library
- 2. Manual chart corrections
- 3. C-Map chart update
- 4. Check licenses
- 5. INT-1 Dictionary
- 6. Radar overlay setup

The dropdown menu Auxilary contains:

- 1. Recalibrate screen
- 2. Conning harbour mode
- 3. Conning backward mode
- 4. Export DB status
- 5. F1 F2 key functions

Chart utilities: Chart utilities: Chart library Manual chart update C-Map chart update Chart licenses INT-1 dictionary Radar overlay setup

#### Auxilary: Auxilary: Recalibrate screen

Conning harbour mode Conning back ward mode Export DB Status

#### 7.2.1: Ship draught

Here you can set a value( with intervals of 0,1 meter) that is between minimum draught and maximum draught. On system startup, TECDIS uses

the maximum draught as standard, but this can be changed in the Setup menu to match changes in vessel loading conditions.

There is therefore no need to make changes in the TECDIS Setup program after loading or unloading the vessel. The value for the draft is used by TECDIS to interpret sonar data, automatic routing and eventual display in Conning image.

#### 7.2.2: Language

Standard language for a TECDIS unit is English, which is also consistent with the language of the Windows Operating System.

But for normal operation of TECDIS it is also possible to switch languages in the Operator Controls, Tools and menus to Norwegian.

French and German may be available depending on the SW version.

Language can be changed during navigation and will not affect the Chart Data.

#### 7.2.3: Time zone adjustment

Standard time in TECDIS corresponds to the time received from the GPS satellites, which corresponds to UTC time.

If a vessel sailing across one or more time zones, the time zone adjustment is used to adjust the clock shown on TECDIS with + / - ten minute intervals relative to UTC.

#### 7.2.4: NMEA input status

"NMEA Input Status" button opens a list of:

- which ports the various sensor data are retrieved from
- what kind of NMEA sentences are used
- input description (if entered in TECDIS Setup)

The Status column indicates whether the data is received or not.

This is only a info summary; any changes to these settings are made in TECDIS Setup

#### Primary positioning method

In the NMEA Data Input window both sources for positioning appears, and can be selected which one shall be primary, and whether the secondary position is shown or not on chart display.

sensor	port	id	describtion	status
Position 1	IP 2	GGA	GPS1 test	data
Position 2		GGA	GPS2	no data
COG/SOG 1	IP 2	VTG	GPS1	data
COG/SOG 2		VTG	GPS2	no data
Heading 1	IP 2	HDT	Gyro	data
Heading 2	IP 2	HDT	AIS	data
Speed Log	IP 2	VHW	Log	data
Rd. Arpa 1	IP 2	TTM	Radar 1	no data
Rd. Arpa 2	IP 2	TTM	Radar 2	no data
Rd. curs.1	IP 2	RSD	Radar 1	no data
Rd. curs.2	IP 2	RSD	Radar 2	no data
Ais	IP 1	Alxx	AIS	data
Depth	IP 2	DPT	Sounder	no data
Rel. wind	IP 2	MWV	Wind	no data
Route	IP 2	RTE	RTE	no data
Jse Position	1 🔽 as p	nic primary p and seco	osition	OK

In case of failure of the primary source, the secondary source is automatically used.

If the secondary source also fails, the TECDIS system automatically change to Dead Reckoning Modus (Log+ Gyro). When switching primary position sensor from position 1 to position 2, COG 1 and SOG 1 will be switched to COG 2 and SOG 2 in the information panel.

#### 7.2.5: Navigation position offset

The Setting Position Deviation button opens a small window at the upper right corner of the chart display, where a fixed value for position deviation can be



entered. The vessel representation will be adjusted automatically when you change the position deviation value.

In some areas old chart positions are somewhat offset to WGS84 datum. It is possible to compensate for this type of error at the TECDIS system entering a position offset.

To close the window and disable the position error, click again on **Setting position dev**iation. The system will then utilize the primary position sensor again.

### 7.2.6: Chart utilities

Most of the functions available in this dropdown list are explained in chapter 6 Chart *Installation and Administration*.

They can be found on the following pages:

- Chart library (see page 179)
- Manual chart corrections (see page 163)

- C-Map chart update (see page 153)
- Check Chart licenses see Chart Licenses on page 171

#### 7.2.6.1: INT-1 Dictionary

When selecting this, you open a dictionary in a new window, listing INT-1 abbreviations for chart objects.



#### 7.2.6.2: Radar overlay setup

This option will enable the Radar overlay and display the radar overlay setup panel.

Note: TECDIS Radar Overlay is made to play against Furuno Radar FAR-2107/2807 series. Primary TECDIS computer chart, secondary TECDIS computer chart and connected IP-based collection devices must be configured with IP addresses in 172.31.xxx IP address space, to receive data from the radar.

**Radar:** This value determines the radar system to be connected. This number must match "RADAR NO" value in the Setup menu for Furuno radar.

Ra	dar	' O'	ve	rk	ay I	CO	rri	ect	tio	1										×
H	ea	din	Ig		1.6	•									R	ac	la	r [1		-
Γ												F								
1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
R	an	ge			88	Π	I.													
1			1	1	1	1	1			1	1			<u>`</u> י	1	1	1		1	1

Heading (bearing): This sliding-controller is used to adjust the radar orientation relative to the chart display.

**Range (d**istance): This sliding-controller is used to adjust the radar range so that it matches the chart display.

#### 7.2.7: Installed Charts on the computer

Under "Chart Utilities " field in the "Setup" menu folder a list with chart databases that are installed on the computer is displayed.

⊂ (S57 OPACO) ✓ ENC (441) ✓ Professional+(525)

Mark with a tick in the box next to the databases which to use.

- ENC: official ENC in C-MAP SENC format
- World: non-official C-MAP charts.(CD)
- Professional+: non-official C-MAP chart (DVD)
- S57: official charts in S57 format
- S63: official charts in S63 format

NB! This field does not appear if you only have one chart database installed.

#### 7.2.8: Alarm volume

Alarm volume is adjustable by sliding controller in the range between 65 to 90 dBA (only displayed when alarm sound is set to PC speaker or keyboard in TECDIS set*up*).

It is not possible to reduce alarm volume completely, which would also be against the certification of the equipment and IMO requirements.

### 7.2.9: Auxilary

The dropdown menu Auxilary contains the following functions:

Recalibrate	Resets the monitor display to correctly calibrated values.
screen	
Conning harbour mode and Backwards conning	Control commands to any connected Conning display. Backwards conning is used for a TECDIS unit that is positioned facing the stern of the vessel, and displays the vessel up-side-down on the conning monitor.
Export DB	This add-on functionality is only used in agreement with
Status	Telko or Furuno Norway.
F1 and F2 key settings	See next section for more information.
Scroll wheel	When the "Scroll Wheel Zoom" check box is enabled, the
zoom	scroll wheel, if available, is used to change the chart scale.

#### 7.2.9.1: F1 and F2 key settings

Selecting this opens the F1 F2 key settings tool.

If a Furuno RCU-018 or a TECDIS Keypad is connected to the chart system, the operator

• F1	○ F2	X
Scale W 1:10	OM	•

will here be able to assign the F1 and F2 keys found on those control units.

The F1 and F2 function keys can be configured as the following:

Function	Description
Chart scale W 1:100M	Set the chart scale to 1:100.000.000
Chart scale W 1:20M	Set the chart scale to 1:20.000.000
Chart scale A: 1:3M	Set the chart scale to 1:3.000.000
Chart scale B: 1:1M	Set the chart scale to 1:1.000.000
Chart scale C: 1:300.000	Set the chart scale to 1:300.000
Chart scale D: 1:100.000	Set the chart scale to 1:100.000

Chart scale E: 1:30.000	Set the chart scale to 1:30.000
Chart scale F: 1:10.000	Set the chart scale to 1:10.000
Chart scale G: 1:3.000	Set the chart scale to 1:3.000
Chart content	Show chart content for the current chart view
Chart Basic	Set the chart view to basic mode
Chart selection 1	Set the chart view to user defined mode 1
Chart selection 2	Set the chart view to user defined mode 2
Chart selection 3	Set the chart view to user defined mode 3
ESCAPE function	Emulates the ESCAPE key on the keyboard
Insert manual pos- ition	Allows the navigator to move the chart display to a specified position
Next menu page	Toggles between the menu pages
Day Dusk Night	Toggles between the day-, dusk- and night monitor color modes

# 7.3: The Chart menu

The chart menu is also described in chapter *3.5: Chart presentation*(see page 50).

In the chart menu, you set the configuration for chart presentations, such as:

- Which information is displayed in the charts
- How information is displayed in the charts
- What additional information layers are displayed in the charts

### 7.3.1: Chart information

In addition to two predefined chart information modes, you can select three user definable information modes. In the second lowest field of the chart menu you select between these 5 information modes:

- **B (base)** gives a chart with a minimum a visible chart objects and configuration options.
- **S (standard)** gived the same chart view as STD mode, but with full display of dangers, and all dangers within the safety contour.
- The modes 1, 2 and 3 gives the user access to setting display of chart objects. Do this by checking the box besides each entry.



Read more about the chart information in chapter 7.3.4: Overview of available chart information(see page 195).

#### 7.3.2: Selectable layers

Some chart databases contain information in selectable layers. These layers are accessed for display by pressing the Layers button in the chart menu. This opens a new window with selectable layers. At the top of the window you select the database you want to activate/deactivate layers for.

8	upplementary Data 🛛 🔀
I	Professional+(587)
ŀ	✓ C-MAP Tides (tidal heights and streams)
	GMDSS areas
	SAR regions
	Improved background and overview charts
l	🗆 Terrain data (gridded)
	Temporary and Preliminary Notices
ŀ	✓ Piracy Information
	-

The layers that are available is as follows:

	S63(GB)	PRIMAR	ENC	Professional+
Temporary and preliminary notices		х	х	х
Admiralty Information Over- lay	x			
Improved background and overview charts		х		х
C-MAP Tides		х		Х
GMDSS areas		х		Х
SAR regions		х		Х
Terrain data (gridded)		х		Х
Piracy information		x		x

Listen over er ikke uttømmende, og det kan være andre lag tilgjengelig for din TECDIS installasjon.

#### 7.3.3: Chart presentation

In the field at the bottom of the chart menu tab you can select between S52 and INT1 chart presentation.

With INT 1 selected, a warning will be shown, stating: Not official view With the arrow buttons to the right of INT 1, you can adjust the size of text and symbols. The magnification factor is displayed besides the arrows. Se kapittel 4.7 for mer informasjon og illustrasjoner.

### 7.3.4: Overview of available chart information

Function name	Description
Text (stand- ard)	When enabled, displays all the standard text in the chart as countries, cities, islands, and other place names.
Text (other)	Shows chart view informations other than that referred to above.
Full hazards display	Shows the hazards placed (displayed) within safety contour and the isolated dangers placed outside the safety contour, which are deeper than "Safe" depth.
Shallow soundings	Shows soundings shallower than "Safe" depth.
Deep soundings	Shows soundings deeper than "Safe" depth.
All depth contours	Shows all depth contours, even within the safety contour.
Hazard symbols	Sets the rule that all obstacles shallower than safety contour will appear with a special UNDERWATER HAZARD symbol.
Cables and pipes	Shows registered cables and pipelines.
Bottom type	Shows information about bottom types.
Grid	Shows information about chart grid.
Lights character	Shows light character information in the chart. NB: some lights, for example those with periods longer than 15 seconds, are accompanied with text instead of active blinking.
Light cursor info	Shows lights character information in a textbox when the cursor is placed over a light.
Active lights	Shows lights blinking with right sequence and color, as seen from own vessel.
Active lead sectors	Extension of lead sectors ( covering the vessels current position ) out from the light
Small vessels/boats info	Shows useful information for light and small vessels, such as port info etc.
Simplified symbols	Shows simplified S52 standard chart symbols. (not INT 1)

Chart	
Quality	Shows labels for quality on chart.
Labels	
Simple	
border	In the chart, shows all lines and boundaries as simple
drawing	lines.
National	Show the location names in the language the chart was
name	produced in.
Additional	Marks objects in the chart, with "!", where additional
info «!»	information is available.
All time-	Showing all temporary, periodic or otherwise time-limited
limited	chart objects, with no link to the current date / time.

#### 7.3.5: Chart data information

By clicking on "?" -down in the left corner in the "Chart" menu folder, a new information window is open. There is a tab (folder) for each available chart on display. Area corresponding to each chart is shaded in red on the display.

IHO presentation library version number is displayed as standard text on window's title bar. (here: "Chart legend, preslib v3.4")

The version number of the chart core of TECDIS is also displayed (CMap v5.2.1.23), and your version of the TECDIS program (4.7.2.23).

The chart database the chart you are viewing belongs to is shown at the bottom of the list (here: ENC).

Chart legend, preslib 3.4, CMap 5.2.1.23, Alo 🛛 🗙				
DE110000 N02B0416 DK2NORSO DK2SKARK				
TECDIS software	Ver. 4.7.2.23 #55003 0-1-0			
Dataset	DK2SKARK.000			
Producer	Kort-Og Matrikelstyrelsen (KMS) - De			
Quality	Map centered in zone of confidence B			
Rating	Official			
Compilation scale	1:180000			
Depth units	Metres			
Height units	Meters			
Sounding datum	Mean sea level			
Magnetic variation	Not specified			
Projection	MERCATOR			
Vertical datum	Mean sea level			
Horizontal datum	WGS 84			
Edition date	24.10.2013			
Update date	27.03.2014			
Edition number	17			
Update number	5			
Safety depth	9			
Safety contour	10			
Chart database	ENC			

# 7.4: The Ship menu

## 7.4.1: Ship symbol offcenter

Here you define how much of the charts are to be displayed in front of the vessel when in Auto Mode.

This functionality is only available while in Auto mode.

#### 7.4.2: Auto sensitivity

Here you adjust the sensitivity of the automatic chart redraw

### 7.4.3: Viewing the double circle

With this selected the own vessel position is displayed with a double circle in the charts.



#### 7.4.4: View vessel contour

With this selected, the vessel size displayed in the charts are relative to the chart scale and zoom level.





### 7.4.5: Course vector

Indicates the vessel course and speed in the charts, by a dotted line in front of the vessel. In the dropdown list you select how many minutes of travel at the current speed the line should reach. The end point of the line is where the vessel will be after the selected time.

### 7.4.6: ROT curved

When this is selected, the course vector is drawn as an arc when the vessel is approaching a waypoint with a course change and wheelover is set to a different value than 0.

### 7.4.7: Auto route activation

Automatically activates the new route. If conbined with Allow route activation entry lane in TECDIS Setup, a route leg will be placed between the new route and the vessel position as well. Default setting for this option is **of**f. Read more about route activation alternatives in chapte4.1: Route planning(see page 63)route planning.

#### 7.4.8: Wheelover

Indicates at what distance from the next route leg a new rudder angle should be given. This is an important setting for correct Track Control turn behaviour.

Select "---" to disable the Wheelover view.

# 7.5: The Data menu

Backing up own data is very important. Individual data important to keep are: routes, tracks, symbols, information and lines / areas.

The data backup is done by copying data to hard drive / CD or memory stick for safe keeping.

It may also be necessary to copy data from one machine to another, both for backup and daily use.

#### **7.5.1: Function**

In this field, select the function that is used to copy own data to or from the file on hard disk /CD/ memory stick.

You have the following options:

- Copy out to file
- Copy in from file
- Copy to TECDIS 2\*
- Copy to TECDIS 3\*
- Delete



\* This alternative is available if configured in TECDIS Setup. The name label is the same as the entered name label in TECDIS Setup.

NOTE: To copy to other TECDIS units, the IP address and name for the units must be configured in TECDIS Setup.TECDIS

#### 7.5.2: Restrict selection - time/area

In this field you can specify what data to be copied in to/out of TECDIS.The field is dynamic and changes according to selected function in the field above.

**The** All option includes all relevant data. For some functions you can also restrict the data selection with a from-date.

The Limited area option includes all data within a rectangle. You will be prompted to draw the rectangle in the chart view after this option is selected.

If data from TECDIS vers 4.7.1.10 or earlier has been stored or copied out / in, then the box for Old Format must be selected for the data to be read it by the newer version of TECDIS SW. *The wrong choice in this box will result in an error, and should be changed before retry.* 

#### 7.5.3: Restrict selection - data type

You can now select which data you want to copy in/out of the TECDIS unit.

#### 7.5.4: Execute

When you now have selected the function you want to use, and added restrictions if needed, you can start the copy process.

To start the process, press the Execute button at the bottom of the Data menu tab. A save/open dialogue opens and you can select the file destination you want, and finish the process.

# 7.5.5: Importing primary and secondary routes

Primary and secondary routes are automatically available for the other TECDIS unit (when they are connected to each other).

This is described in chapter 7.5.6.1: Manual route synchronisation(see page 201).

#### 7.5.6: Route synchronisation

TECDIS can transfer routes from primary to secondary TECDIS unit and vice versa, in two different ways. Both methods allows the operator to retrieve a planned, active route (for the current voyage) on the secondary TECDIS unit if the primary TECDIS unit fails. For this to work the following must be ensured:

1. The TECDIS Setup field Data Export IP must contain the IP address of the other TECDIS unit.

- 2. TECDIS units must use the LAN adapter, intended for TECDIS network and both devices must be connected to a network switch. *NB*! *NB*! Do not use crossover cable directly between TECDIS units.
- LAN adapter used for connecting the TECDIS units should not be reconfigured to use an IP address outside the 172.31.xxx.xxx / 255.255.0.0 subnet.
- 4. For the replication to work the TECDIS unit has to have different license dongles (eTokens).

NB! The method for Automatic Route Transfer is pre-installed on TECDIS units manufactured after November 1, 2008. It is not possible to activate route synchronisation on more that two TECDIS units at the same time.

#### 7.5.6.1: Manual route synchronisation

When the manual synchronisation is used and a route is active on one or both TECDIS units, a backup route is copied to the other TECDIS unit. This backup route is not automatically included in the route list on the receiving TECDIS unit, but it can be imported, when needed.

The following routes can be imported from the Data directory (<u>C: \</u> <u>Program Files \ TECDIS \ Data</u>):

- Primary route ReceivedPrimaryRoute.lst
- Secondary route ReceivedSecondaryRoute.lst

To import a route, select Copy IN From File in the function field, and press the execute button. The open dialogue now opens, and you can select file type and location.

Select Import data file type and then select **ReceivedPrimaryRoute** or ReceivedSecondaryRoute from the File name field.

#### 7.5.6.2: Automatic route synchronisation

When Automatic Replication is enabled, then all the new routes, changing routes and routes deleted automatically, are reflected to the other TECDIS unit. The result is that the routing databases are identical on both TECDIS units.

#### Activate automatic replication

To enable Automatic Route Replication, do the following:

1. Verify that the requirements for this feature are met in accordance with the above list.

- 2. If there are routes on both TECDIS units, choose on which TECDIS unit the routes should be preserved and on which TECDIS unit the routes will be deleted.
- Insert service key on both TECDIS units and shut down the chart program to return to Windows.



Run <u>C: \ Program Files \ TECDIS \ Replication.exe</u> on both TECDIS units.

- 5. On the TECDIS unit with the routes that should be retained, select Retain routes on this TECDIS and activate replication and press the Execute button.
- 6. On the TECDIS device which routes should be removed, select Delete ALL routes on this TECDIS and activate replication and press the Execute button.
- 7. Remove the service key from both TECDIS units and reboot the systems.

After both TECDIS units are again operational, all the routes from the unit where the routes were kept will be automatically transfered to the other TECDIS unit. All further route changes will automatically be reflected to the other TECDIS unit.

#### **Disable Automatic Route Replication**

To disable Automatic Route Replication, do the following:

- 1. Insert service key on both TECDIS units and shut down the chart program to return to Windows.
- On both TECDIS units; delete the <u>C:\Program Files\TECDIS\SetRtRep</u>-<u>licateActive.txt</u> file.
- 3. Remove the service key from both TECDIS units and reboot the systems.

# 7.6: The Log menu

TECDIS stores data for position, course and speed of a vessel, ARPA and AIS targets, every minute. History from a specified date can be displayed in several ways.

#### 7.6.1: Log text

In the Date dropdown list you can select the date for the log you want to review.

"20 min" button opens a list of position, course and speed for every twenty minutes for the date selected in the upper field.

"Noon" button opens a list of position, course and speed for each hour, from 12.00 the previous day to 12.00 the day selected in the upper field. For every 4 hours is displayed sailed distance ("Distance Watch"), and on the bottom appears total sailed distance("Distance total").

Setup Chart	Ship Data			
Log   Sale	AIS			
Date				
26. mai. 20	14 🔳			
20 min.	Noon			
00:00 💌	Details			
12 hr ENC	DR fix			
Visual replay				
Replay voyage				
Ais ship data				
Query ais database				
Delete old log data				

"Details" button opens a window with a detailed log of the hours, beginning with the time set in "00.00" field.

The log contains detailed information for every minute, of vessel's position, course and speed, on the chart display that is used:

the chart center and the scale are represented by a cross if:

- Auto Mode was active
- the type of chart used (" ENC "," S52 ")
- if the Primary Position Source was used (" PRI ");
- if the GPS position encoder was ok ("X");

if the position was corrected manually, it is shown on a separate, third line ("Offset") Se illustrasjon.

"12.t ENC" button shows what kind of chart data has been displayed on the screen, every minute in the last 12 hours.

ENC 12	hr.log	SKS DEMI	NI	mmsi	:259985000	26.	mai 2014	
time	Agency	Cell	ENG	ced.	date	upd	date	
12:00	540	GB400797	x	1	09.09.2008	1	01.03.2010	
 12:02	540	GB400797	x	1	09.09.2008	1	01.03.2010	
12:03	540	GB400797	х	1	09.09.2008	1	01.03.2010	
12:04	540	GB400797	x	1	09.09.2008	1	01.03.2010	
12:05	540	GB400797	x	1	09.09.2008	1	01.03.2010	
12:06	540	GB400797	x	1	09.09.2008	1	01.03.2010	
12:09	540	GB400797	х	1	09.09.2008	1	01.03.2010	
12:10	540	GB380210	х	2	02.04.2008	2	01.03.2010	
12:11	540	GB380210	X	2	02.04.2008	2	01.03.2010	
12:13	170	7188	-	1	25.04.2009	51	13.10.2012	
12:15	3000	Z2700000	-	1	25.10.2006	1	25.10.2006	
12:16	3000	A2700840	-	2	01.01.2007	7	01.01.2010	
	Cancel	ſ			Save the		Print	

"DR fix "button is active and selectable if L.O.P. functionality was used to determine the position on the selected date. Clicking the "DR fix" button, opens a log of completed performed positional decisions, with all associated observational data. All log files can be saved or printed.

#### 7.6.2: Visual Replay

"Replay voyage" button opens a "Replay" window where earlier voyages log data can be simulated on the chart showing own ship, AIS and Arpa Target position for the date and time specified.

Replay			×
26.	mai	2014 -	00:00:00
	Show Po	🗹 Use DR	
Star	t X1	ļ [	

"Show Positions" button, opens the view of the situation on the chart, as it was at the chosen time.

"Start" button starts replaying the situations, as specified in the log, with 1 minute interval.

"Use DR" option allows Dead Reckon Mode for positions between each saved minute and vessels will be shown with new calculated positions every second. Replay speed is set with the slider at the bottom of the window.

Click on "Replay voyage" button again to stop the playback of a certain earlier plot and return to the present situation.

### 7.6.3: AIS ship data

"Query AIS database " button opens up the possibility to make queries against a vessel database where all previously received AIS targets are stored under a name and registered with MMSI, IMO, Call Sign, and date of last reception from the vessel.

Enter the name of the vessel when the window is opened, then click on the "Enter" button.

Last date for stored location is displayed on the <u>Date</u> button. Clicking on this button the situation is displayed on the chart and "Replay" window opens automatically.

Replay of the situation can also be started from the "Replay" window as described in *Visual Replay* (see page 204)

Click on "Query ais database " button again to close the "AIS database" window and return to the present situation.

#### 7.6.4: Delete Old Log Data

"Delete old data" button deletes log data older than a year if the deletion is confirmed in the subsequent "Delete log files older than one year" window.

### 7.6.5: Screenshots

Display screenshots from TECDIS can be generated at any time by pressing "Ctrl" + "Alt" and "PrtScrn" buttons simultaneously or "AltGr" and "PrintScrn".

A copy of the screen is automatically saved with a file name that is generated from the year-month-date-time-second (YYMMDDHHMMSS), and is available in "C:/ Program Files / TECDIS / Screens" file.

## 7.7: The Safe menu

From version 4.1.7.15 of TECDIS it is no longer possible to set an alarm sound for Restricted, Caution and/or Potential danger.

In the Safe menu you set the safety settings in TECDIS. Among others it is here you adjust the different depth contours that are always shown in the charts, and select settings for hazard display and anti grounding.

#### 7.7.1: Safe, Deep and Shallow

In the chart view you will always see four depth areas with depth contours:

Safe Safe dpt	All areas in the chart shallower than the safe depth are marked in blue, and the contour is highlighted. All areas outside the depth contour for safe depth is considered safe waters by TECDIS. An anti grounding alert will sound if the vessel safety zone crosses the depth contour for safe depth.	Setup ChartShipDataLogSafeAisSafe dpt.Shallow Deep92109210Check timeAngle20 sec.±5°Auto Safe HazardsOn (recommended)
Shallow Shallow	All areas in the chart that are shal- lower than the shallow depth are marked in dark blue. Shallow depth can be used to separate shoals within the safe depth zone.	Camera control
Deep Deep	All areas in the chart that are shal- lower than the deep depth are marked in a light grey-blue color.	
Not defined	All areas in the chart that are deeper than the deep setting. Marked in a lighter gray-blue color.	

- The value of the Safe Depth field can be set manually, but now lower than the Draught Max or Safe Depth Min values in TECDIS Setup.
- Deep and shallow can be changed freely.

When you start TECDIS the system automatically checks for the set Draught Max and Safe Depth Min values.

If either of these values are higher than the Safe Depth setting in the Safe menu, that Safe Depth value will be changed to the highest value.

In charts without the selected safe depth contour, the next deeper contour is displayed. Some chart areas can contain incomplete data, and even though non-closed contours can be displayed on the charts, they can not be used as safety contours.

# 7.7.2: Check time and angle (anti grounding parameters)

The specified values set a safety zone ahead of the vessel where dangerous objects will generate an alarm.

See chapter 4.4: Anti grounding(see page 97) for details.

#### 7.7.3: Auto Safe Hazard display setting

The Auto safe hazard display settings determine how TECDIS displays danger objects within the safety contour during anti grounding alarm situations.

When an anti grounding alarm situation occurs this setting will



determine if Safe hazard display and shallow soundings 7.3: The Chart menu(see page 193) is to be activated or not.

The available settings are:

Disabled	The selections for Safe hazards and Shallow Soundings in the chart menu determine the hazard display.			
On (recom- mended)	The display of Safe hazards and Shallow Soundings are activated when an anti grounding alarm occurs, and requires manual deactivation when the dangerous situation is passed.			
On and Off	The display of Safe hazards and Shallow Soundings are activated when an anti grounding alarm occurs, and are automatically set back to their previous setting when the dangerous situation is passed.			

#### 7.7.4: Camera control (formerly FLIR)

When Camera Control is activated in the Safe menu (Installation of Camera control in TECDIS Setup is required), a CAM symbol is shown at the end of a 0,5 NM long vector originating in the Conning position.

The operator can control the camera by placing the cursor over the CAM symbol and right click. The appearance of the CAM symbol changes, ant it is now highlighted. It will now follow the cursor movements in the chart, and the camera unit itself will be moved.



The camera can now be locked at a fixed position in the charts, such as to a reef or a light, by placing the CAM symbol in the desired position and right clicking.



In addition the CAM symbol can be placed over an ARPA or AIS target, and will then both lock on to and follow the movements of the target.



### 7.7.5: Alarm

The operator can choose some of the alarm functions. See chapter 4.5: *Notifications and alarms*(see page 98) for a more detailed description of the alarm system.

Function name	Description			
	This mode is only available if made so by a service technician.			
Standby mode	When this option is selected no audible alarms will be triggered. It is displayed with a large warning notice in the bottom right part of the charts.			
New WP/CTS	When the vessel is approaching a new waypoint (WP) on active sailing route, an alarm is triggered when the wheelover line is crossed.			
	When ENC charts are available, Anti-grounding System and Route Check will always verify ENC data.			
Non-ENC dangers	By selecting this option it is possible to verify unofficial chart data, if there is no ENC chart coverage in the control area.			
	When this option is enabled, the Route Check will trigger an alarm both from ENC and unofficial chart data.			

Data

# 7.8: The AIS menu

### 7.8.1: Display filter

#### **Function Description**

Function	Description	Sotun Chapt Shin Data
Range	All AIS targets outside this specified range is filtered from the chart view.	Log Safe Ais
Active	Filters which AIS targets are shown as active, based on the distance to own vessel. This makes it possible to view all targets with course, COG- vector and past track line. In INT-1 presentation mode the	Range 50 NM Track 3 min. All targets active Hide class B Relative COG vectors Lost active targets
	vessel name will also be shown. To remove the distance limit and display all AIS targets, select No limit.	Dist.limit 10 NM 💌 Alarm when lost Danger CPA all targets – time distance
Track	Track specifies the length of the past track lines for the AIS targets. It is specified in minutes of travel.	30 s. ▼ 1.0 NM   Image: Standard
Hide class B	Removes the display of all class B targets from the chart view.	
Relative course vector	Sets all AIS target COG vectors to be relative to own vessel movement. If not selected, targets use true course for the COG vectors.	

#### 7.8.2: Lost active targets

AIS targets within the range specified in the Area *field* is marked with a black cross when the target data ends.



If Alarm when lost is enabled, this will also provide an alarm.

#### 7.8.3: Danger CPA all Targets

AIS targets which are within the range specified in the Distance field *from ow*n vessel future position and within a time frame specified in the Time field, activate a Ship CPA alarm.

Raise CPA alarm is always selected, and cannot be changed by the operator. Contact a certified service technician to make this setting user changeable. If Raise CPA alarm is off, a <u>warning message</u> will be displayed continuously in the lower right corner of the chart view. This mode can be used when navigating confined waters where the CPA alarm is triggered very often.

CPA alarm disabled

If Show danger CPA pos. is selected the there are displayed continuously graphic symbols for all dangerous AIS targets. Hazardous targets are shown on the chart, regardless of AIS / ARPA functions settings, and they appear in red until the danger situation is cleared. When Show Dangerous CPA pos. is selected, the CPA is continuously displayed with a small green circle on its course vector and with a little green square on a crossing vessel's heading vector.



If TECDIS loses the signal from a vessel that have an active CPA alarm, a new alarm will be activated: Lost CPA (a dangerous vessel has disappeared from the system). For further description of AIS and ARPA functionality see see *ARPA and radar targets* on page 121Asee *AIS - operation* on page 123AIS.

# 7.9: Monitor calibration

All information in an electronic chart system has to be clearly visible. To ensure this the monitor has to be adjusted to display correct colours. This especially important for night view mode, when the monitor luminance is reduced.

Remember to test colours with dusk and night modes, not only day mode!

ECDIS test images for monitor calibration is placed in the IHO presentation library. Open the library by pressing Control + Alt + Shift + T, and **navigate** to the test images by pressing A, B, C, D, E or T keys on the keyboard.

#### 7.9.1: Controlling the monitor contrast

TECDIS monitors are not to be adjusted with the monitor keys when used with an ECDIS system. All contrast and luminance settings are to be performed from the TECDIS through the serial connection to the monitor.

Control the monitor contrast and luminance by opening test image E, and verify that the grey box is visible.

Background lumination is now controllable with a sliding controller that appears below the day/dusk/night dropdown field in the main toolbar.

This controller gives a **green** *calibrated* indicator at different luminance levels for day/dusk/night. Outside the calibrated values a red indicator is shown.



The monitor backlight setting can also be set with the AC Rain controller on the Furuno RCU-018 (if connected).

### 7.9.2: Check the colours

Check the colours produced by the monitor by opening the T test image. This is a colour test diagram. Check that all diagonal lines are clearly separated from the background:

- 3 yellow diagonal lines
- 4 orange diagonal lines
- 3 magenta diagonal lines
- 4 green diagonal lines
- 3 blue diagonal lines
- 3 grey diagonal lines



Control the visibility of each color in the test diagrams A to E. If the monitor fails this test, it no longer satisfies the color calibration requirements for the use of ECDIS and must be evaluated by qualified personnel to be adjusted, repaired or possibly replaced.

NB. If the monitor settings have been changed manually in the monitor's Setup Menu, or to make sure that the correct values are used, recalibrate the screen. This can be done from the Setup menu, by going to the Auxiliary dropdown menu and selecting Recalibrate screen.

This blank page is automatically inserted where appropriate to ensure that new Chapters begin on a recto page.



# **TECDIS Setup**

In this chapter we will look closer at the system settings that are only available in TECDIS Setup.

A.1TECDIS Setup at a glance	217
A.2Service mode	
A.2.1Entering service mode during system startup	218
A.2.2Entering service mode when TECDIS is running	218
A.3NMEA Data	219
A.3.1NMEA Input	
A.3.2NMEA Output	224
A.3.3Supported NMEA sentences	
A.4Vessel settings (Specification)	
A.4.1More about restoring saved default values	
A.4.2More about T-setup/TSZ files	
A.5Chart installation/ Misc	
A.5.1More about Monitor Calibration	233
A.6Licences	235
A.6.1System licenses (TELcahrt License)	
A.6.2Jeppesen licenses (C-Map License)	
A.7Track Control - Settings	239
A.7.1The autopilot field	
A.7.2The Starting Requirements field	240
A.7.3The Default values new route field	240
A.7.4Other settings	240
## **A.1** TECDIS Setup at a glance

TECDIS Setup contains the most important settings in TECDIS.

These settings are divided in to 4-5 tabs, depending on the system add-ons you have purchased.

#### NMEA Data(see page 219)

Here you set all in and output sensor settings. These are sent as NMEA sentences over either comports or an IP network.

#### Vessel settings (Specification)(see page 227)

Here you set the vessel size and sensor placement.

The only setting the user should set is **Allow route activation entry lane**. All other settings are to be set by <u>certified</u> service technicians only.

#### Chart installation/ Misc(see page 232)

From this tab you can maintain your chart database if you use charts from Jeppesen.

Here you also check the monitor calibration status.

#### Licences(see page 235)

From this tab you can administrate your licenses, both for charts and purchased add-ons.TECDIS

Note that only Jeppesen chart licenses are administrated from this tab. Licenses for other chart providers are administered from the S63 Chart Loader program.

#### Track Control - Settings(see page 239)

If the TECDIS unit is configured with Track Control, this tab is used to set the autopilot specific settings.

## A.2 Service mode

To gain access to TECDIS Setup a TECDIS Service Key has to be used. This is a custom made USB dongle that comes with the TECDIS unit.

We recommend that the TECDIS Service Key is stored in a safe place, as changes in TECDIS setup are only to be executed by certified technicians. Each TECDIS unit comes with a Service Key, and a backup Service Key CD. It is the captains responsibility that the Service Key is used only when necessary.

#### **Entering service mode during system** A.2.1 startup

- 1. Before you turn on the TECDIS unit, insert the TECDIS Service Key in an available usb port.
- 2. Start the TECDIS unit
- 3. You will now be prompted to remove the Service Key to start the TECDIS unit the regular way. Select cancel, which allows you to start the unit without starting the TECDIS program. TECDIS

You now have access to Windows desktop, and the programs TECDIS Setup, S63 Chart Loader, and NMEA Server.

## A.2.2 Entering service mode when TECDIS is running.

- 1. Enter a TECDIS Service Key in the TECDIS unit.
- 2. Wait until the text label Servicemode appears in the Servicemode lower right corner of the chart view.
- 3. Turn off TECDIS as normal, by pressing the STOP button in the top left corner of the screen.

This exits the TECDIS program, without turning of the computer. You now have access to Windows desktop, and the programs TECDIS Setup, S63 Chart Loader. and NMEA Server.

## A.3 NMEA Data

The NMEA Data tab in TECDIS Setup contains all controls and configurations for input and output in the TECDIS system.

FEGDIS / TELchart E	GS Setup	. local l	p: [192.168.0.233]				
Nmea Data 🛛 Sp	ecifica	tion   Ch	art Installation /	/ Misc	Licensing   Track Co	ontrol	
						Input	Output
Data	Nmea	Input	baud/TPA	port	Info	1	
Position 1	GGA	IP2	192.168.0.233	2001	GPS1 test		
Position 2	GGA				GPS2		
COG/SOG 1	VTG	IP2	192.168.0.233	2001	GPS1		
COG/SOG 2	VTG				GPS2	- Sente	tence and port select
Heading 1	HDT	IP2	192.168.0.233	2001	Gyro	Doci	ition 1 + CDS1 test
Heading 2	HDT	IP2	192.168.0.233	2001	AIS	Posi	
Water speed	VHW	IP2	192.168.0.233	2001	Log	004	TCP 192 168 0 222 port 2001
Radar arpa 1	TTM	IP2	192.168.0.233	2001	Radar 1	Juan	
Radar arpa 2	TTM	IP2	192.168.0.233	2001	Radar 2	·	
Radar cursor 1	RSD	IP2	192.168.0.233	2001	Radar 1	_ lb	Serial port activity
Radar cursor 2	RSD	IP2	192.168.0.233	2001	Radar 2		1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 13
AIS	Alxxx	IP1	192.168.0.71	50000	AIS		
Depth	DPT	IP2	192.168.0.233	2001	Sounder	Receive	ed data on selected port <u>Test</u> Clear Log
Rel. wind	MWV	IP2	192.168.0.233	2001	Wind		
Route RTE	WPL	IP2	192.168.0.233	2001	RTE		
Monitor ctrl.	Hatte	Com2	9600		Main display		
Alarm ctrl.	Digi				Alarm central		
Control unit	Rcu18				Furuno keyboard		
Trackcontrol	GNS				Simrad AP80		
Navtex	NRX				Simulator		
Camera	Curr				Current Night Nav.		
Options 1							
Options 2							
Options 3							
Options 4							

The table on the left of the tab displays the current configuration, and is immediately updated if alterations are made to the input and output t*abs i*n the *upper* right part of the NMEA Data tab.

The dropdown list for the input field will impact the display of available alternatives in the other dropdown lists in the input tab, aiding you in setting the configurations correctly.

Note: Descriptions in this chapter are presented as information only. Only authorized service technicians can reconfigure the settings in the NMEA Data tab.

## A.3.1 NMEA Input

Note: All positions sent to TECDIS from external sensors have to be in the WGS-84 format.

Use this tab in the NMEA Data tab to configure input signals.

Select the data-type you want to configure. This is done by selecting it in the table to the left, or by selecting the data-type from the correct dropdown list. When you have selected the data-type, the entry for that

data-type in the sensor table to the left is shown with a blue background colour.

#### A.3.1.1: Info text

Then you enter a description in the info field, *to* identify the type of sensor/data later. This can be used as the label for the sensor, as it will be visible in any alarms in TECDIS related to the sensors functTECDISion.

#### A.3.1.2: NMEA sentence

In the dropdown list for NMEA sentence you select the NMEA sentence your sensor is sending data in. Available NMEA sentences in the dropdown list will change according to the selected data-type/sensor-type.

When a given sensor can send out more than one of the supported NMEA sentences, the highest placed alternative in the list below should be used:

#### Position 1 og Position 2

- 1. \$??GNS GNSS fix data
- 2. \$??GGA GPS fix data
- 3. \$??GLL Geografic position (Lat/Long)
- 4. \$??RMC Recommended minimum specific GNSS Data
- 5. !AIVDO AIS own ship position. UAIS VHF Data link own-vessel report

#### COG/SOG 1 and COG/SOG 2

- 1. \$??VTG Course and speed over ground
- 2. \$??RMC Recommended minimum specific GNSS data
- 3. \$??OSD Own ship data
- 4. !AIVDO AIS own ship position. UAIS VHF Data link own-vessel report

#### Heading 1 and Heading 2

- 1. \$??THS True heading and status
- 2. \$??HDT Heading true
- 3. \$??OSD Own ship data
- 4. \$??VHW Water Speed and Heading
- 5. !AIVDO AIS own ship position. UAIS VHF Data link own-vessel report

#### Radar ARPA 1 and Radar ARPA 2

1. \$??TTM Tracked Target Message

#### Radar Cursor 1 and Radar Cursor 2

1. \$??RSD Radar System Data

#### AIS

1. !AI??? AIS UAIS VHF Data Link

#### Depth

- 1. \$??DPT Depth
- 2. \$??DBT Depth below transducer

#### A.3.1.3: Input port

In the dropdown me**nu In**put port, the physical serial port/IP-port for the chosen sensor is selected.

TECDIS has 6-12 COM-ports and 4 IP-ports.

When the desired input port is selected, the letter for the entry in the sensor table for this sensor will become:

- unaltered(white) if the sensordata received do not match the configuration in TECDIS Setup.
- green if the sensordata match the specified sensor
- red if the port is already selected for another sensor

#### An example:

#### To obtain positiondata from a GPS, the settings can be as follows:

- 1. Select **Position 1** or **Position 2** in the *Select sensor* column
- 2. Select the port(COM or IP) where you have connected the GPS, in the port field.
- 3. Select the NMEA sentence type the GPS transmits
- It could also be beneficial to describe the sensor as a GPS in the Sensor description field. If the system loses connection to the sensor during sailing, TECDIS will sound an alarm. The alarm will display both data-type(eg position 1), port(eg COM 3) and the description entered(eg GPS).

#### IP ports

For each IP port an IP address and an IP port number has to be given.

The test button enables a connection to the IP server with the chosen address/port number and in the field Received data on selected port the received data will be displayed.

#### A.3.1.4: The Baud/TPA field

In the Baud/TPA field the data transfer speed for the selected/active COM port is shown. The speed is changed by selecting a different value in the dropdown list.

The NMEA standard is 4800 (low speed), but note that som sensors require different speeds. The following speeds are available in the TECDIS system:

- 4800
- 9600

- 19200
- 38400

AIS generally use NMEA high speed, 38400 baud. (Select AIS in the *data field*, and check that the *Baud/TPA* field is set at 38400 baud).

#### A.3.1.5: Serial port activity

In *the serial port activity* field all data from the selected serial port is displayed. A serial port receiving data will blink with green color. The indicators are for COM ports 1-12 in increasing order from left to right.

#### A.3.1.6: Received data on selected port

In the "Received data on selected port"-field the data that are being received from the COM port that is marked with blue in the sensor table. If received data is valid NMEA sentences, the line will flash in green.

If IP ports are used, data for all sensors attached to that port are shown. The sensors will then all flash green when valid.

When changing to another COM-port, the data displayed will change and the data for that port will be shown.

#### A.3.1.7: Other COM port connections

All "Input"-ports settings that is not used should be set to "----".

There are some predefined in/outputs on the different TECDIS models, which vary The following COM-ports are predefined and can not be used as NMEA I/O:

Model	ports
TECDIS 2138AA and	COM 1 & 3 are RS-232
2138AD	COM 2 is set for the Furuno Keyboard
TECDIS 2424	COM 1 is RS-422 (non-isolated, not valid for NMEA)
	COM 2 is RS-232
TECDIS 2140	COM 1, 2 & 3 are RS-232

#### A.3.1.8: COM-port for Monitor ctrl

Select the COM-port for the serial cable from the monitor. This connection will control the monitor background light and calibration settings, as well as the alarm sounder in the screen unit (if used).

Ensure that the power supplied to the monitor is from the same source (UPS, mains socket etc.) as for the TECDIS.

#### A.3.1.9: COM-port for Alarm ctrl

Select the COM port that should be used for the alarm central interface (if used). If an alarm interface is not connected, set this port to "----".

In the "NMEA"-sentence pull-down menu there are two choices; "Digi" and "ALR".

- "ALR" will set the port up to serial NMEA communication with the alarm central.
- "Digi" option should be used when connected to a proprietary alarm interface TEA-01, which is an open/close relay contact.

#### A.3.1.10: COM-port for Furuno Keyboard (RCU-018)

Furuno Keyboard is only available for TECDIS 2138

Set "Input"-port to "COM 2" if the Furuno RCU-018 is connected to the TECDIS.

Physically, the "COM 2"-port provides live 12VDC power to the Control unit and thus this port cannot be used to any other equipment. If a Furuno Keyboard is not connected. set the port to "----".

#### A.3.1.11: COM-port for CAM control

Select the COM-port where you have connected a gyro-stabilized camera. If a camera control interface is not connected. set the port to "----".

## A.3.2 NMEA Output

IEGOIS / IELchart EGS Setup, local (p: 192.168.0.233)										
Nmea Data   Sp	Nmea Data   Specification   Chart Installation / Misc   Licensing   Track Control									
	Input Output									
Data	Nmea	Input	baud/TPA	port	Info		'. ''	DMD	D1 40	
Position 1	GGA	IP2	192.168.0.233	2001	GPS1 test	AF	'B	KMB	RMG	WPL+RIE
Position 2	GGA				GPS2		87			
COG/SOG 1	VTG	IP2	192.168.0.233	2001	GPS1		B			
COG/SOG 2	VTG				GPS2	<b>□</b> 4	□ĭo	<b>□</b> 4 <b>□</b> 10	<u>□</u> 4 <u>□</u> 10	<u>4 – 10</u>
Heading 1	HDT	IP2	192.168.0.233	2001	Gyro	5		5 11	5 11	5 11
Heading 2	HDT	IP2	192.168.0.233	2001	AIS	1-0	- 1Z			
Water speed	VHW	IP2	192.168.0.233	2001	Log					
Radar arpa 1	TTM	IP2	192.168.0.233	2001	Radar 1	🖂 Activ	ate IP s	erver port 2000		
Radar arpa 2	TIM	IP2	192.168.0.233	2001	Radar 2					
Radar cursor 1	RSD	IP2	192.168.0.233	2001	Radar 1	lb –	Serial	port activity		
Radar cursor 2	RSD	IP2	192.168.0.233	2001	Radar 2		1 2	3 4 5	6 7 8	9 10 11 12
AIS	Alxxx	IP1	192.168.0.71	50000	AIS				(	
Depth	DPT	IP2	192.168.0.233	2001	Sounder	Received c	lata on :	selected port	Test	Clear Log
Rel. wind	MWV	IP2	192.168.0.233	2001	Wind					
Route RTE	WPL	IP2	192.168.0.233	2001	RTE					
Monitor ctrl.	Hatte	Com2	9600		Main display	1				
Alarm ctrl.	Digi				Alarm central					
Control unit	Rcu18				Furuno keyboard					
Trackcontrol	GNS				Simrad AP80					
Navtex	NRX				Simulator					
Camera	Curr				Current Night Nav.					
Options 1										
Options 2										
Options 3										
Options 4										

In the Output tab in the top right corner of the NMEA Data settings panel, you will find the following NMEA sentences that TECDIS can transmit:

- APB
- RMB
- RMC
- WPL+RTE

For each of the outputs, there are choices of which of the physical COMports the output should be directed trough.

#### A.3.2.1: Enabling IP server

By selecting "Activate conning IP server port 2000" opens a TCP / IP server in TECDIS for data transfer to TECDIS Conning program.

This option should only be activated when TECDIS Conning displays the data from TECDIS.

## **A.3.3 Supported NMEA sentences**

TECDIS supports communication with external equipment using the following NMEA sentences, as specified by the NMEA standard and IEC 61162-1 (Ed. 3.0):

NMEA sen- tence	Description	Send / Receive
АВК	(AIS) AIS addressed and binary broadcast acknowledgment	Receive
ABM	(AIS) AIS Addressed Binary and Safety Related Message	Send
АСК	Acknowledge Alarm	Send
ALR	Set Alarm State	Receive
APB	Heading/Track Controller (Autopilot) Sentence "B"	Send
BBM	(AIS) AIS Broadcast binary message	Send
DBT	Depth Below Transducer	Receive
DPT	Depth	Receive
DTM	Datum reference	Receive
GGA	Global Positioning System (GPS) Fix Data	Receive
GLL	Geographic Position – Latitude / Longitude	Receive
GNS	GNSS fix data	Receive
HDT	Heading, True	Receive
MTW	Water temperature	Receive
MWV	Wind Speed and Angle	Receive
OSD	Own Ship Data	Receive
RMB	Recommended Minimum Navigation Inform- ation	Send
RMC	Recommended minimum specific GNSS Data	Send / Receive
ROT	Rate of Turn	Receive
RSA	Rudder Sensor Angle	Receive
RSD	Radar System Data	Receive
RTE	Routes	Send / Receive
THS	True heading and status	Receive

TTM	Tracked Target Message	Receive
VDM	(AIS) AIS VHF Data-link Message	Receive
VDO	(AIS) AIS VHF Data-link Own-vessel Report	Receive
VBW	Dual Ground/Water Speed	Receive
VHW	Water Speed and Heading	Receive
VSD	(AIS) AIS Voyage Static Data	Send
VTG	Course Over Ground and Ground Speed	Receive
VWR	Relative (Apparent) Wind Speed and Angle	Receive
	Waypoint Location	Send /
VVPL		Receive
ZDA	Time and date	Receive

NOTE: TECDIS also supports a number of proprietary protocols for specific application areas. Contact your TECDIS supplier for details.

## A.4 Vessel settings (Specification)

Note: Descriptions in this chapter are presented as information only. Only authorized service technicians can reconfigure the settings mentioned in this chapter.

The exception from this is Allow route activation entry lane, that can be set by the navigator.

TECDIS / TELchart ECS Setup, local lp: [192.168.0.233]		×
Nmea Data Specification Chart Installation /	Misc   Licensing   Track Control	
Ship size (m.) 118 - Length 23 - Beam 5.0 - Draught min. 8.0 - Draught max. 5 - Safe dpt. min. 12 - Height	Position sensor 1 $32$ $\xrightarrow{\bullet}$ m. from bow $\overline{-4}$ $\xrightarrow{\bullet}$ m. center -> starbrd. Position sensor 2 $40$ $\xrightarrow{\bullet}$ m. from bow $\overline{-2}$ $\xrightarrow{\bullet}$ m. center -> starbrd.	ver. 1.7.22 Other TECDIS station(s) data export: Name: TECDIS 2 IP: 192.168.1.102 Name: TELchart EI IP: 192.168.1.103 This unit is TECDIS3 (or above) Radar use true EBL reference Arpa is conning referenced Monitor size, main menu 24 " sidebar (9:16) v
Conning position 32 _ m. from bow 0 _ m. center -> starbrd. 25 _ m. height	Radar antenna 1 45 × m. from bow -5 × m. center -> starbrd.	☐ backward (gyro - 180°) ☞ Video toggie VGA ☐ Alternative display comm. Alarm ☞ Allow Standby Mode ☐ Alaws i6/0710/070, 0, 5%
Depth transducer 30 m. from bow 0.0 m. above keel	Radar antenna 2 45 ÷ m. from bow 5 ÷ m. center -> starbrd.	Allow route activation entry lane
Name SKS DEMINI	MMSI 259985000	Restore saved default values

In this tab the dimensions of the vessel and sensor placement is specified. In the table below some selected settings are listed, and what effect those settings have on the TECDIS system.

Field name/im- age	Description
	Length, beam, draught and height of the vessel, measured in meters.
Ship size (m.) 118 + Length 23 + Beam 5.0 + Draught min. 8.0 + Draught max	For "Length"- and "Beam"-fields the ship's largest dimension value for length and beam should be used. For "Draught" and "Height" the largest possible height and draught taking load conditions into consid- eration should be entered.
5 ÷ Safe dpt. min. 12 ÷ Height	For safe depth min, enter the wanted minimum safe depth for the vessel. This value overrides the draught min/max as basis of the safe depth settings in the TECDIS Ship menu tab. Navigators cannot set a shallower safe depth than this inside TECDIS.
Other TECDIS	If your TECDIS installation consists of two or more units, the name and IP-address for the connected units are entered in this field.
unit(s) data export Other TECDIS station(s) data export: Name: TECDIS 2 P: 192.168.1.102	The name you choose is used to identify the unit in the Data menu tab in TECDIS. If text is entered in this field when no unit is connected, an alarm will be turned on when TECDIS is started.
This unit is TECDIS3 (or above)	This function allows automatic route transfer to TECDIS no 2, and add the possibility to transfer data (objects, past track lines, routes) to the other units.
Radar use true EBL reference	When this checkbox is marked, it is assumed that bearings lines received from the radar(s) are true referenced. If this option is not marked, TECDIS will perform the necessary adjustments.
Arpa is conning referenced	When this checkbox is marked, it is assumed that target information from Arpa radar is already adjusted to the navigator position.
	If it is not marked, TECDIS will perform the necessary adjustments.
Monitor size,	Monitor inch diagonal is the monitor screen size in inches, measured diagonally.
main menu	Backward (gyro-180°) this flips the heading values given by the gyro 180 degrees.

Monit	or size,	main men	u
24	× ″	sidebar (S	):16) 💌
🗆 ba	ckward	(gyro - 18	30°)
₹ M	ieo toggi	IE VGA	•
	ternativ	e display	comm.

In the **Main menu** dropdown list you can select where you want to place the main toolbar. There are two options; horizontal along the top of the monitor (default), and vertical along the left side of the monitor.

Allow Standby Mode: In this mode no audible alarms will sound. Activation of this mode is done in the Safe menu tab. Allow standby mode will also allow deactivation of CPA alarms in TECDIS.

Alarm if HDT1-HDT2>2,5<sup>o</sup>: When this box is checked, an alarm will be given if the heading from the two sensors Heading 1 and Heading 2 deviates with more than 2.5 degrees.

#### Alarm



NOTE: If TECDIS is configures with Track control, this option will be available from that settings tab in TECDIS Setup.

**Remote silence only**: Only available for systems connected to an alarm central. If an alarm is acknowledged on the alarm central with this function activated, only the alarm sound will be turned off. The alarm will still remain in TECDIS.

**Keyboard alarm** is the built in alarm sounder in the Furuno RCU-018 Keyboard.

Allow route activ- ation entry lane F Allow route activation entry lane	With this selected, TECDIS will ask the navigator which waypoint to connect a route leg to. This route leg will start in the own vessel position. This question will be asked when a route is selected for activation and voy- age.
Erase Secondary past track Erase Secondary past track	If two positioning methods are in use, pressing this but- ton will remove the past track line from the secondary position sensor.
Name	Here you write the name of the vessel.

Name SKS DEMINI

#### MMSI

Here you write the MMSI number of the vessel.

MMSI 259985000

Restore saved default values

Restore saved default values

Here you can restore all settings in NMEA server, Conning, and TECDIS Setup to the settings that were present the last time TECDIS Setup was closed. Read More

Depth below transducer



Here the distance from the keel to the sensor can be set in steps of 0,1 meter.

# A.4.1 More about restoring saved default values

When you restore settings from a backup file on the TECDIS Service Key, you have to follow this procedure:

- 1. Press the restore saved default values button
- 2. A dialogue window called <u>Restore to xxxxx: Locate setup-file to</u> restore from, and click OPEN is opened.

xxxxx is the eToken/system ID for your TECDIS. An example of and eToken number is eT 55001.

- 3. Navigate the folders until you find TECDIS Service Key The file that contains all settings, is called T-**setup-xxxx.tsz.**
- 4. Select this file, and press the OK button

## A.4.2 More about T-setup/TSZ files

A **T-setup xxxxx.tsz** file is generated every time you start and stop TECDIS Setup.

The file is saved by:

- 1. entering a TECDIS Service Key in the TECDIS unit.
- 2. stopping the TECDIS programme
- 3. starting the TECDIS Setup programme
- 4. stopping the TECDIS Setup programme
- 5. removing the TECDIS Service Key
- 6. repeat the procedure for TECDIS no 2

**T-setup xxxxx.tsz** files can be used by Telko in an analysis of the system settings. This aids in most support cases.

## A.5 Chart installation/ Misc

The procedure for installing charts in TECDIS Setup is explained in *6.1.1: Quick installation with Jeppesen SENC charts*(see page 136).

TECOIS / TELC	hart EGS Setup, local lp: [192.168.0.233]	×
Nmea Dat	a Specification Chart Installation / Misc Licensing	g   Track Control
		Monitor Calibration and Test
6	Copy Chart Database to Harddisk	Monitor Calibration Status
	Insert the chart CD and follow the instructions that appear.	Manual calibration loaded but not verified
	Installed Databases (S68-6B) (1) ChartletsBase (1,Default) ENC (575)	Calibration Name: HD24T21MMD for DVI Monitor Type: Unknown
	Read Chart Database CD D- CD/DVD	Identify Monitor and Load Automatic Calibration
<b>`</b>	Select the CD-ROM drive.	Manual Calibration: Load Calibration File
	Found: ENC(575) This Database has already been installed	
	Alternatives- of	Monitor Connection Tests
	© Remove Delete this Database from the harddrive.	Miscellaneous
	<ul> <li>Remove Licenses</li> <li>Remove chart licenses for this database.</li> </ul>	Start C-Map Chart Manager
	<ul> <li>Set as Default Set this Database as default.</li> </ul>	
	В	Baok

The tab Chart installation/Misc contains the following:

Copy Chart Database to Harddisk	Gives access to updating, removing and reinstalling chart databases
Enter Ves-	Here you have to state the vessel and owner information.
sel Inform-	This information is necessary for chart licensing and war-
ation	ranty purposes.
Send Regis- tration	Saves the information entered in Vessel Information on the TECDIS unit harddrive. The file can now be transferred to another computer with internett access for sending to Telko at support@telko.no.
Monitor Cal-	This field reports on the current monitor calibration status,
ibration and	and gives access to methods of updating the monitor cal-
Test	ibration and monitor serial connection diagnostics.
Start C-Map	Gives access to the C-Map chart databases, licensing and
Chart Man-	diagnostics tool for the chart databases in a separate
ager	program made by Jeppesen.

### A.5.1 More about Monitor Calibration

The correct monitor calibration is necessary to ensure correct colour rendition in the charts.

To recalibrate the monitor, first try automatic calibration by pressing Identify Monitor and Load Automatic Calibration.

If this is unsuccessful, perform a manual calibration by pressing the Manual Calibration: Load Calibration File... button and select the correct calibration file for the connected monitor.

If you cannot find a calibration file on the hard drive, this can be acquired by support@telko.no or an authorized dealer.

The filed Monitor Calibration Status reports the current status for the monitor calibration. The possible status reports are given in the table below along with actions required if you experience issues.

Status	Action	
No serial line to mon- itor!	Connect the monitor to a COM-port	
Calibration not per- formed!	Perform automatic or manual calibration	
Wrong manual cal- ibration file loaded!	The loaded manual calibration file does not match the connected monitor Acquire the correct calibration file from support@telko.no and perform manual calibration again.	
Monitor contains wrong automatic cal- ibration!	Contact support@telko.no or an authorized dealer.	
Automatic cal- ibration loaded but not verified	Calibration was successful, but the monitor type has to be manually verified.	
Manual calibration loaded but not verified	Control that the calibration is correct by comparing the model name on the monitor itself and the name given in Calibration Name.	
Automatic cal- ibration loaded and verified	Calibration of the monitor was successful and	
Manual calibration loaded and verified	vermeu	

Calibration Name reports the name of the manually or automatically loaded calibration file.

Monitor Type is the name of the monitor model, as reportd by the monitor itself.

Identify Monitor and Load Automatic Calibration start an automated identification of the monitor type and then tries to automatically load the correct calibration file from the monitor to the computer.

Manual Calibration: Load Calibration File... allows for manual loading of monitor calibration files form the folde <u>C:\Drivers\TECDIS</u>.

Monitor Connection Tests... gives access to tests for verifying that the monitor serial connection to the computer is correct (testing buzzer sound, adjusting background lighting and performing a monitor identification test).

## A.6 Licences

In this tab you will find information about your system licenses and Jeppesen C-MAP licenses.

ECOIS / TELchart ECS Setup, local lp: (192.168.0.23	a 🔤 🗵
Nmea Data   Specification   Chart Installati	on / Misc Licensing Track Control
TEEDIS / TELohart License	Show / edit license
C-Map License System ID	Databases
JeT Telko 55003	ENC
Add License manually	Data Set or Area Name
Get expired licenses	
Licenses list	
Add Licenses from file	* Hydrographic Department, Maritime and Port Authority (MPA) - Singapore
License order	License string Add License

TECDIS uses eToken codeplugs from Jeppesen as the system ID. Without the correct eToken connected to your unit, TECDIS will not start.

## A.6.1 System licenses (TELcahrt License)

Information about your system licenses, such as what options are activated for your TECDIS unit, can be found by pressing the Show / Edit license button

TECDIS / TELchart License TELcode5 v/1.2 eT (c) TELKO A/S Codeplug: #55003 5.6 1FFFh Oh eT	Standard version Name seek	Chart server engine Seismic streamers Night Watch Onticol beging interface
( License Ver., Subver, Feature1 Feature2 ) Enter password for licensetype and click (Program)	Weather display and routing	Dynamic objects
Password =	Radar overlay TrackControl 	
	<u>D</u> K	

This information includes licenses number and version information, and a list of installed add-ons. The add-ons are displayed in blue writing in the right field.

#### A.6.1.1: Activating add-ons

To activate add-on functions, do the following:

- Contact your Furuno Norway dealer to get an updated license code. The license in your system will be reprogrammed when adding a feature, so you have to report which other features you already have and want to keep.
- 2. The license code you receive is entered in the Password field.
- 3. Press the Program button to reprogram the license.
- 4. Press the OK button to exit the license tool.
- 5. Press the Show / Edit license button again, to check that the add-on list is updated with the correct add-ons.

### A.6.2 Jeppesen licenses (C-Map License)

All functionality described in this chapter is valid for chart databases in the CM93/3 format distributed by Jeppesen(C-Map). For chart databases in other formats (S63), see chapter*6.1: Installing chart databases*(see page 136) for more information.

#### A.6.2.1: Add license manually

G-Map License System ID	Databases
JeT Telko 55003	ENC
Add License manually	Data Set or Area Name
Get expired licenses	- Test tele lindermarkis fermineles (TUIO)
Licenses list	* East Asia Hydrographic Commission LEAHUJ * Japan Hydrographic and Oceanographic Department (JHOD)
Add Licenses from file	* Hydrographic Department, Maritime and Port Authority (MPA) - Singapore
License order	License string Add License

- The Add license manually button opens a field to the right where the license code issued by Jeppesen can be entered in the License String field
- 2. In the dropdown menu labeled Databases you have to select the chart database or the function the license code is valid for.
- 3. In the Data Set or Area Name field you select the chart area or the functionality the license code is valid for.
- Then you enter the received license code in the License String field. The license code is received from either Jeppesen (charts) or support@telko.no (function).
- 5. Finish and exit by pressing the Add License button.

6. Repeat this process for each chart area and each license code in each chart database.

#### A.6.2.2: Get Expired licenses

C-Map License System ID JeT Telko 55003	Databases
Add License manually	Display expired licenses before date 05-2015
Get expired licenses	
Licenses list	
Add Licenses from file	
License order	•

The Get expired licenses button gives you access to an overview of all licenses that has expired within a selected date (month and year).

#### A.6.2.3: License list

G-Map License System ID JeT Telko 55003	Databases
Add License manually	07-2014 : Zone O ENC - 1DDED6F93ED1E723
Get expired licenses	
Licenses list	
Add Licenses from file	
License order	

The Licenses list button gives you access to a list of valid licenses, sorted by chart database.

#### A.6.2.4: Add license from file

C-Map License		
System ID		Databases
JeT Telko 55003	ENC	
Documents	-	
🗉 🍙 Music		
🗉 📼 Pictures	_	
🗉 📑 Videos		
🗈 🖻 Cato		
💼 🐢 Computer	•	
	OK	Cancel

- 1. The Add License from file button opens a new field.
- 2. There you navigate in the file structure to the left of the field until you find the password.usr file you have received.
- 3. Select the file, and confirm adding it by pressing the OK button.

All chart licenses for all chart databases and all areas included in your purchased license, is now activated.

#### A.6.2.5: License orde

G-Map License System ID JeT Telko 55003	Data	Dases
Add License manually	Subscription	
Get expired licenses	Save Order	Display Order
Licenses list	* East Asia Hydrographic Commission	Kiear
Add Licenses from file		05.2014
License order	Add dataset	Add expired at

The License order button gives you access to a tool for easy generation of a license order summary that you can send to Jeppesen.

## **A.7 Track Control - Settings**

In this tab all settings for connection between TECDIS and one of the specified auto pilots are set.

ECDIS / TELchart ECS Setup, local lp: [192.168.0.233]	
Nmea Data   Specification   Chart Installation / I	Misc Licensing Track Control
EG018 / EE chart (EE8 Setup.       toeal tp: 1092.168.0.2331         Nmea Data       Specification       Chart Installation / I         Autopilot       Anschutz NP2025         Anschutz NP5500       Emmi SEM200/FAP-2000         Simrad AP80       Starting requirements         S       max tane deviation         Image: Starting requirements       max tane deviation         Image: Starting requirements <th>Wise       Licensing       Track Control         Image: Class AW       Image: Class AW         Image: min. allowed turn radius x 0.01 NM         Image: min. allowed WOL distance x 0.01 NM         Image: max. allowed WOL distance x 0.01 NM</th>	Wise       Licensing       Track Control         Image: Class AW       Image: Class AW         Image: min. allowed turn radius x 0.01 NM         Image: min. allowed WOL distance x 0.01 NM         Image: max. allowed WOL distance x 0.01 NM
Use common heading and log sensors fo	or TECDIS primary input and autopilot !

The Track Control tab is available only when Track Control is added to the TECDIS License.

For installation and configuration of autopilots, please see the installation manuals from the manufacturer.

Note: The autopilot and TECDIS has to be connected to and configured with the same course and speed sensors.

## A.7.1 The autopilot field

The options of the autopilot field reflect which autopilots can be connected to TECDIS. The following autopilots are available:

- Anschütz NP2025
- EMRI SEM200/FAP-2000

## A.7.2 The Starting Requirements field

The values of the Starting Requirements field denotes which conditions has to be met before Track Control Mode can be activated.

**max course deviation** sets the maximum number of degrees the vessels COG can deviate from the planned COG.

**max lane deviation** sets the maximum distance from the vessels position to the active route leg, expressed as x times the width of the route leg.

(For example; if the width of the route leg of the planned route is 100m, and *max lane deviation* is set to **2**, the vessel distance from the route leg can be up to 200m and Track Control is still active).

min. speed sets the vessels minimum speed in knots.

### A.7.3 The Default values new route field

The values in this field is used as standard values when you plan new routes.

Speed kn sets the standard value for speed in knots.

Lane x 0.01NM sets the lane width standard value, expressed in hundredths of a nautical mile

(For exampe; a value of 10 in this field will represent a width of 0,1NM).

**Turn radius x 0.1NM** sets the standard value for the turn radius, expressed in tenths of a nautical mile.

(For exampe; a value of 5 in this field will represent a standard turning raduis of 0,5NM).

### A.7.4 Other settings

**min. allowed turn radius x 0.01 NM** specifies the minimum allowed turn radius, expressed in hundredths of a nautical mile. Denne verdien skal framkomme under fartøyets sea trials.

**max. allowed WOL distance x 0.01 NM** specifies the maximum allowed WOL distance the operator can set, expressed in hundredths of a nautical mile.

**max Remote Control ROT** specifies the max ROT allowed in the autopilot remote control tool in TECDIS, expressed in degrees per minute.

**WP warning and alarm time** specifies the distance from a waypoint the vessel is when any set warnings or alarms will be generated.

Alarm limit difference primary and secondary heading specifies how big the deviation in degrees between primary and secondary heading sensor has to be before an alarm is generated.

Alarm limit difference primary and secondary position x 0.01 NM specifies how big the difference in position between primary and secondary position sensors has to be before an alarm is generated. The value is expressed in hundredths of a nautical mile. If the distance between the positions from the position sensors deviate more than this value, TECDIS will generate an alarm. This blank page is automatically inserted where appropriate to ensure that new Chapters begin on a recto page.



# **Optional add-ons**

In this chapter we will look closer at the optional add-ons available for your TECDIS system. See how you can improve navigational security and voyage financials through these powerful add-ons for your TECDIS system:

B.1Weather overlay	246
B.1.1How to enable weather overlay	247
B.1.2How to download the Weather Service subscription	248
B.1.3Control of weather subscription licenses	251
B.1.4Downloading a new weather forecast	251
B.1.5Controlling the Weather overlay on the chart	253
B.1.6Custom Views	255
B.1.7Cursor info	256
B.1.8Explanations of weather data chart symbols	256
B.1.9Selection of units for wind speed, temperature, etc	257
B.1.10Treatment of downloaded weather forecasts	258
B.1.11Alarm Settings	259
B.1.12Set the alarm settings	259
B.1.13About alarm conditions	260
B.1.14The timeline feature	261
B.2Radar overlay	264
B.2.1Radar overlay correction	264
B.2.2Radar display slider control	265
B.3Piracy Information	266
B.3.1Activation of Pirate option	266
B.3.2Turn on display	266
B.3.3Adjust the viewing of piracy data	267
B.4Autopilot (Track control)	269
B.4.1Autopilot mode	269
B.4.2Sensor surveillance and error tolerance	270
B.4.3TECDIS TCS operation	271
B.4.4Activating Heading Control mode	272
B.4.5Activating Track Control mode	272
B.4.6External (Remote) mode	273
B.5TECDIS keypad	274
B.5.1The layout	274
B.5.2Keys	275
B.5.3Alarm functionality	277

B.5.4Navigating your TECDIS with the keypad	277
B.5.5Numeric mode	278
B.5.6User defined keys	279
B.5.7Video switching	279
B.6Furuno RCU-018	281

Some add-ons require you to sign subscriptions, while some are one time purchases. Contact your local Furuno Norway dealer, Furuno Norway or Telko AS for more information and purchase.

## **B.1** Weather overlay

Weather overlay includes advanced functionality that uses high-quality weather prognosis data, available as a subscription service from Jeppesen Marine.

Weather overlay can be configured by the TECDIS operator and includes both atmospheric data and detailed data on waves. Weather overlay includes alarm functionality that is intuitive and allows an easy visualization of the weather window and dangerous weather conditions.



Weather overlay is also integrated with the route system, which provides manual weather routing and custom voyage meteorograms.

Note that a three-month demonstration subscription to weather overlays are available for all systems running TECDIS software version 4.7.1.X or 4.7.2.X. To activate this subscription, please contact Jeppesen Marine and enter the System ID / TELKO eT number. A configuration code must also be obtained from TELKO AS or Furuno Norway.

### **B.1.1** How to enable weather overlay

To activate weather overlays:

1. A License code TECDIS option must be added to the System ID / TELKO eT - license key

2. A Weather Service subscription from Jeppesen Marine must be enabled

#### 7.9.2.1: Activating the license

To find out if eToken license key has this option enabled, do the following: Start TECDIS Setup.

Go to the Licensing tab.

Then press the Show / edit license button and wait until the fields are updated.

The Codeplug # .... field shows the correct number and the eToken field to the right of this has the options listed with the activated blue color.

If the field Weather display and routing is not shown in <u>blue</u>, take a screen capture (print screen).

Save this picture with the filename eTxxxxx.png, where xxxxx represents the System ID / TELKO eTnumber.

Send this file as an attachment to an email to an authorized TECDIS dealer or support@telko.no.



When the system has approved the option, the weather overlay button will be available on the main toolbar.

#### **B.1.1.1:** Activate Weather Service subscription

Your Weather Service subscription must be activated by Jeppesen Marine on their own servers and this does not affect the local TECDIS unit.

When a TECDIS device with a Weather Forecast subscription enabled requests weather data from Jeppesen Marine's servers, their servers compare the eToken number to their eToken registry for subscription confirmation.

# **B.1.2 How to download the Weather Service** subscription

Forecasts can be downloaded using either an Internet connection or via email. Before the forecast can be downloaded, subscription information must be obtained from Jeppesen Marine.

Both of these actions are performed from the Weather window.

Note that if you want to use an Internet connection, the network administrator for the vessel should be consulted for information about the settings that apply to your vessel network. This information is needed in step 6 below.

#### **B.1.2.1:** Download procedure

- £
- 1. Open the Weather window by pressing the Weather overlay button on the main toolbar. A message that No current weather Forecasts are available is displayed.
- 2. Ignore this message by pressing the OK button.



Press the Data button, indicated by a red frame in the image below, to extend the Weather window with a data area. This area is closed by pressing the Data button again.

4. Press the Download New button in the lower right corner of the Weather window.

×								🙃 Vær	
			d Size: 27 kb	Download Estin	<b>&gt;&gt; &gt;&gt;</b>	19: 16:08 💌 Nä	03.06.2007 💌	144 44	
		<u> </u>	tion d weather subscription data	Model:  Subs				J	
					§ Sykloner	9 Alarmer	Vind Vind	Trykk	
					Regn/sno	C Skyer	Temp.	Bolger	
	1 [				1 1 1			[	_
		Start Download	Configure Connection	Show Subscrip	Sykloner Regn/sno	Alanmer Skyer	Vind	Trykk Bolger	E

Before first time use, the connection has to be configured. Press the Configure Connection button.

G Var		×
H ≪ 03.06.2007 ▼ 19:16:08 ₩ Nã	Communication Type	HTTP Proxy Server
J	• Internet • E-Mail	• Auto • Direct • Manual
	Connect To Server	
Trykk Z Vind Halarmer Sykloner	· Lui ope	
🎫 Bolger 🔢 Temp. 🔤 Skyer 💯 Regn/sno	Connection Timeout (s) 30	
	Max Attachment Size (kb) 1000	
	·	
Tilpasse Marker info Sykloner ? Data Enh. Tidslinje Alarmer		Save Config Back

#### Update

- A. If TECDIS is set up with an internet connection in the form of a network cable connected to the Internet LAN port on the rear of the computer, select Internet in the Communication Type field.
- B. There are three connection options in the Connect to Server box, and basically you should select the location that is closest to own location. If this option seems poor, another option should be selected.
- C. The Connection Timeout field must be set to at least 90 seconds but 120 seconds is recommended. For slow Internet connections a higher value is recommended, for example between 180-240 seconds.
- D. In the HTTP Proxy Server field you set the settings as required by your local network to access the Internet. Your local network administrator can inform about the correct settings for HTTP Proxy Server.
- E. Click Save Config button to save the configuration and return to the download window.

G Ver H4 44 03.06.2007 -	19: 16:08 📩 Ná 🕨 💓	Communication Type Internet EMail	>
Trykk Trykk Ind	Alarmer 5 Sykloner	Connect To Server © Europe © Americas © Asia	
		Max Attachment Size (Kb) 1000	

#### E-mail updates

A. If TECDIS is not set up for an Internet connection, or weather updates for other reasons will not happen directly, weather updates can be obtained by generating a file, then sending it as an attachment to an e-mail on another computer.

- B. Click **Save Config** button to save the configuration and return to the download window.
- C. Select E-mail in Communication Type field.
- D. Set Max Attachment Size to a value less than the limit for email attachments that apply to local mail server. Is the limit is 1 MB (Mega Byte), enter this as 1000 in Max Attachment Size field, where the values are expressed in KB (Kilo Byte).
- E. Click Save Request File button to initiate saving of the order file.
- F. Specify the location where the order file is to be saved and press the Select button. It is a condition that the order file is stored on a removable medium such as a TECDIS Service Key.
- G. The order file is generated and a window opens showing the progress. Send this file to <u>datacenterx@c-map.no</u> and wait until all responses are received. Note that the subject line of the response from Jeppesen Marine (C-Map) shows how many answers are mailed to you in total.
- H. Note that the download window can be hidden by pressing the Data button, pending the response files. The Weather overlay window can be closed completely, or TECDIS can be stopped without resulting in problems with the download.
- I. To enter answer files, reopen Weather overlay window and press the Data button.
- J. Save all received mail attachments that have extension. Dat or. JWP on a USB memory stick. Insert the USB memory stick containing the received files into an available USB port in the TECDIS unit and press Load Reply Files.
- K. Navigate to the received subscription info file(s) and press the Select button. Subscription loading is now complete and TECDIS is ready to download weather data.



When the response files have been processed a report for the download is displayed. Later, when the weather is downloaded, an additional Load and Return button will be available for immediate viewing of downloaded weather trend.

## **B.1.3 Control of weather subscription** licenses

When subscription download is complete, the subscription(s) are inspected by doing the following:

1. Press the Download New button in the Data field.



Show Subscription button should now be selectable and by pressing it you can view details about the weather models that are available in your subscription.

3. Subscriptions applicable to the eToken in use now appears in the right hand side of the window. With the slider to the right of the field you can navigate down on the list if it is long.

### **B.1.4 Downloading a new weather forecast**

When the subscription is loaded, the weather forecasts are available. The weather forecasts are related to weather models.

#### **B.1.4.1:** About weather models

Both the Model field in the Download New window and subscription information window (Show Subscription window) show a number of weather models after the weather subscription is downloaded.

These refer to the various mathematical weather prediction models that are available and are calculated up to several times daily. When downloading a new forecast, part of the data are selected from the latest weather prediction model.

Many of the models have a distance in kilometers in the model name (example: Global - ECMWF 150 Km). This indicates the distance between each data point being downloaded. Similarly to zooming into a map image, the data for each point between these data points will be calculated.

As a general rule a lower kilometer value gives a higher level of detail on the weather chart. The main reason for choosing a model with a higher distance between data points is to reduce the download size. Large downloads will not be stopped, even if the data files are 50-100 MB in size. A large forecast data file takes a long time to download and may cause delays in the TECDIS system during operation.

#### **B.1.4.2: Download Window**



- A. When a weather model is selected, the download window will include a number of new options:
- B. In the Select Parameters field, you can choose between providing a list of weather variables that can be selected; pressure, temperature, wind, rainfall, swell and waves.
- C. In the Period field you can select the forecast period in days.
- D. In the Resolution field, choose the update frequency of the data points. Again, the data for each time point between the data points will be calculated. A smaller value results in more frequent updating of data points and will result in larger download size.
- E. When the Include Cyclones option is checked, the data on cyclones will also be downloaded together with other weather data. This eliminates the need for a separate download for cyclone data.
- F. In the Area field both the size and location of the area selected to download weather data is controlled and displayed. The size in square degrees appear along with maximum size of a downloaded area, as allowed by subscription.
  - By default, the area shown on the chart is used to specify limits for downloading weather data [Area (Screen)]. To adjust the weather data area, zoom or pan the chart view to the preferred range is shown on the chart. If your subscription does not allow downloading of data for the entire chart view, the central part of the chart is prioritized.
  - 2. By pressing Select on Map button, you can override the default setting for selecting weather data area. The cursor changes and the first corner of the rectangle is set out in the map by pressing the left mouse button. Then you can set the diametrically opposite corner with a new press with the left
mouse button. Press the Select Screen button to return to the default display area.

The estimated download size appears at the top of the window and is updated at any time according to the current selections. Adjust the model selection, parameter selection, site selection, time period and resolution to the desired compromise between detail and the download size.

Typically, a download size of 5-8 MB provides more than enough detail, but normally requires a broadband connection. For other connection types, carefully consider the costs associated with data download along with the usefulness of the information weather data can provide.

When the settings are implemented, weather data is downloaded using the same procedure as for the subscription download.

# **B.1.5 Controlling the Weather overlay on the chart**

The main window for controlling the weather overlay can be divided into three main areas;

> the upper section contains timing control for the Weather overlay

🚱 Vær			×
	28.06.2012 💌 0	12:00:00 🔹 Nå	
28.06.2012 01:00:00	)		08.07.2012 01:00:00
👽 Trykk	Vind	Alarmer	§ Sykioner
Bolger	Temp.	Skyer	megn/sno
Tilpasse Markor	info Sykloner -	? Data Enh.	Tidslinje Alarmer

- the central area controls which weather parameters to display in the Weather overlay
- the lower area is where you gain access to the various detail windows for the weather overlay and its settings.

Note: Weather overlay is displayed on the chart only when the chart scale is in the overview chart levels. For chart scales with a level of detail less than 1:500 000, the weather overlay is hidden, but the weather overlay window which controls the download and setup will be available.

#### **B.1.5.1:** Time management field

The time management field includes several ways to verify the date and time of presentation of weather overlays on the chart:

13.10.2009	Ŧ
------------	---

Displays the selected date. Select or enter a specific date.

- 08:00:00 🚔 Displays the selected time. Select or enter a specific time.
- Now Go to today's date and current time



- Moves three hours back or forward in time.
- H4 PH
- Moves one day back or forward in time.

Slider to look at weather data at a given time between the start and end time of the forecast. While the sliding controller is in focus (indicated by a dotted rectangle around the slider), the keyboard's arrow keys are used to move the time one hour forward or back.

The dates and times in the lower left and right corner of the sliding controller are the start and end time for the forecast downloaded.

Note: If the cyclone data is also loaded, these often start earlier than the weather forecast and some times the start of the sliding controller only shows cyclone data.

#### **B.1.5.2:** Display Controllers

The buttons in the middle field of the window for weather overlay, controls the data to be presented in the chart. The buttons for the selected and visible weather data is displayed as pressed down (here: Wind).

Pressing the selectable buttons, toggles the display of this type of weather. If a button is gray (here:Clouds and cyclones), it means that the selected weather model does not contain this type of weather.

Trykk
Bolger
Vind
Temp.
Alarmer
Skyer
Sykioner
Regn/sno

The system optimizes the way the selected weather appears, while preventing that the Weather overlay display is too complex.

If only one type of weather data is selected, it is displayed in several ways simultaneously. For example, waves are shown using both colored areas, region contours and direction arrows.

If several types of weather data are selected, TECDIS display the different weather data with different display forms. For example, when Waves,



Pressure and Wind is selected simultaneously, Waves are shown with the colored areas, Wind with arrows and Pressure with contours.

Alarms and Cyclones have unique display forms and display of these weather datas does not affect the display of the other weather data.

There are some combinations of selected weather data that can not be displayed simultaneously."Waves", "Temp.", "Clouds" and "Rain / Snow" are all best displayed with the colored area, but only one of these can be displayed at once. However, it is possible to show "Clouds" and "Rain / Snow" at the same time if no other weather data is displayed.

#### **B.1.6 Custom Views**

😧 Weath	er			X
H4 44	11.10.2009	20:14:41 🗘	Now	<b>&gt;&gt; &gt;&gt;</b>
10.10.2009	01:00:00		21.10.200	9 01:00:00
Area Fill	Pressure	<ul> <li>Lines 1</li> </ul>	Total Waves	-
Values	Temperature	<ul> <li>Lines 2</li> </ul>	Temperature	
🗵 Alarms	Cyclones 🗆	Arrows:	Wind 🔽 Waves	; 🗹 Swell
Easy	Cursor Info Cyclone	• ? Data	a Units Timeline	Alarms

If a particular view is desirable and default views described above is not sufficient, a custom view mode is selected by pressing the Customize button in the lower left corner of the weather window.

This will replace the default display buttons of fields with flexible options for what to display as range (color marked area), values (only values for each data point), Lines 1 (contours) and lines 2 (contours).

Enabling alarms, display of cyclones and arrows for wind, waves and swells can also be selected in selection boxes.

#### **B.1.6.1:** Ending a custom view

Pressing the same button again (now labeled Basic) changes the weather window back to the default view.

### B.1.7 Cursor info

In the Cursor Info field to the right of the Customize button at the bottom of the weather window, you can specify which weather data to be displayed as text next to the pointer when held over the area with weather data points.

Weather information displayed relates to the date selected in the upper weather window.

- None option disables the marker information.
- When the Visible option is selected, only the values selected for display in the chart.
- The All option displays all the data available in the data set. By default this option is set for the "Cyclones" page
- The Timeline option provides a much more responsive method for displaying weather data in the chart overlay.

# **B.1.8 Explanations of weather data chart symbols**



By pressing the "?" Button at the bottom of the weather window, the weather window expands to include the explanation of the different types of presentations of weather data in the chart.

Pressing the button again closes the window.

Which weather data presented are selected in the Show Chart Legend for dropdown menu.

# **B.1.9** Selection of units for wind speed, temperature, etc.

😣 Vær								×
H4 44	03.07.2012 💌	13:55:47 🔹 Nå	H4 44	Temperature	Celsius	Pressure	hPa	•
03.07.2012 01:00:0	DO		13.07.2012 01:00:00	Current Speed	M/s 🔽	Heights	Meters	•
	🟹 Vind	Alarmer	§ Sykloner	Cyclone Wind	M/s 📑	Rain/Snow	Millimeter	s 🕶
Bolger	👔 Temp.	🔛 Skyer	Regn/sno	Wind Speed	M/s _	]		
Tilpasse Marko	r info Sykloner 💌	? Data Enh.	Tidslinje Alarmer	🗵 Detailed Wi	nd Arrows (Kn	ots)		

Pressing the Unit Button for weather window you can specify the preferred units of measurement for

- Temperature
- Velocity of the current
- Cyclone Wind
- Wind Speed
- Pressure
- Heights (Meteorological tides)
- Rain Snow
- Detailed Wind Arrows (Knots)

Press Unit Button again to close the selection window units.

The graphical presentation for the display of wind data varies with the unit of measure chosen.

For all other units of measurement than Knots, it is only the wind arrow length that describes the wind speed. When Knots is selected all the wind arrows are the same length, but they have indicators of wind speed as well.

With the Detailed Wind Arrows (Knots) checkbox you can select to display wind arrows associated with the Knots selection, even though another measure is chosen.

# B.1.10 Treatment of downloaded weather forecasts

😡 Vær								×
H4 44	14.07.2012 -	09:38:02 ÷ Na	H4 44	Start Date	Days	Forecast Model		Selected
				03.07.2012	10	Global - ECMWF 25 km		Load
03.07.2012 01:00:0	0		13.07.2012 01:00:00	29.06.2012	10	Global - ECMWF 150 km		Delete
Taudele	Vind	1 Alexanon	Suldanan	29.06.2012	10	Global - ECMWF 150 km		Details
Пукк		Alarmer	J oykiuliel.	28.06.2012	10	Global - ECMWF 150 km		
Bolger	Temp.	Sk yer	였 Regn/sno	27.06.2012	10	Global - ECMWF 150 km		Current Details
	_			27.06.2012	3	Global - ECMWF 150 km		Delete Old Files
				27.06.2012	3	Global - ECMWF 300 km		Delete olu i lies
				27.06.2012	3	Global - ECMWF 300 km		Import
Tilpasse Markor	rinfo Sykloner -	? Data Enh.	Tidslinie Alarmer	27.06.2012	10	Global - ECMWF 25 km	-	Download New

A list of downloaded weather forecasts can be retrieved by pressing the Data button.

The list that appears contains information about

- Forecast Model
- Start Date
- Days (number of days the forecast is for)

Section closes again when you press the Data button again.

List of downloaded weather forecasts can be viewed with the following background colors:

Blue	The selected weather forecast
Green	More than half of the projection period is in the future.
Yellow	Less than half of the projection period is in the future.

White All information in the weather files are in the past.

The selected weather forecast can be;

- loaded by pressing the Load button
- deleted by pressing the Delete button
- inspected by pressing the Details button in the top right corner of the window.

Chart area covered by the selected weather forecast is marked in red on the chart, if a sufficiently large scale is chosen for the display of the chart.

In the lower right corner of the window, the following buttons are available:

Current Details	Displays detailed information about the selected weather forecast.
Delete Old Files	Deletes all weather forecasts that is more than 14 days old.
Import	Import a weather forecast received via other methods than the one used by pressing the

	Download New button. This method allows import of files. in the GRB and XML format.
	Note that this function only supports files that are supplied by Jeppesen Marine
Download New	Opens window for downloading weather forecasts.

#### **B.1.11 Alarm Settings**

Alarm settings in the Weather overlay allows you to specify exactly what kind of weather conditions you are to be notified about.

When an alarm criterion is defined TECDIS will provide clear warnings with indication of when and how these factors may be present.



Such indications are given on the chart together with the weather overlay, on the timeline and as redlining on routes.

#### **B.1.12 Set the alarm settings**



is started by pressing the Alarms button in the Weather window.

This will open a new field, where you can select the type of weather that will give alarms:

- 1. Over the field the following buttons are displayed:
  - Add
  - Edit
  - Delete
- 2. Selecting the Add button opens a new field to the right and a drop down menu appears at the bottom.
- 3. Here you select the kind of weather that will give an alarm, and the limit value for it is set in the field at the bottom right. Complete the alarm setting by pressing the Add button again.

- 4. Selecting one of the options in the box that already has a defined alarm value, followed by pressing the Edit button opens a new field to the right. In this field, the alert criteria can be adjusted, added or deleted. Areas that have weather data that exceeds the alarm conditions are marked as gray fields in red color.
- 5. In the timeline specified alarm conditions are shown as; a red line along the bottom of the graph, purple when cyclones are near and green for normal condition.
- 6. The parts of an activated route that runs through an area that will be shaded in red, in a scenario in the future, when the vessel will pass (estimated) are colored red while the Weather overlay is active.
- 7. All weather data displayed on the chart, relates to the time that is controlled by controllers in the timer field in the upper left corner in the Weather window. The calculated position of own ship is shown with a symbol that moves along the active route on the chart, synchronously with the settings in the timer field and Weather overlay symbols on the chart.



#### **B.1.13 About alarm conditions**

An alarm condition can be based on

- certain types of weather data (for example: Wind speed above 20 m / s)
- a combination of several types of weather data (for example: "Wind Speed of 20 m / s and Total Waves Height over 6 m").

When an alarm condition contains more than one type of weather, an alarm condition will not be activated before all the weather data that has alarm limit has been exceeded.

An unlimited number of alarm conditions can be added, and one or more of these alarm conditions can be selected simultaneously.

When more than one alarm condition is selected at the same time, the alarm condition will be triggered if one of the selected conditions are met.

It is important to understand the difference between combining several types of weather data in a single alarm condition and choosing separate alarm conditions for certain types of weather.

Alarm condition Windspeed over 20 m / s AND Waves Total Height over 6 m will result in a very different alarm condition than choosing two separate alarm conditions Windspeed over 20 m / s and Total Waves Height over 6 m.

TECDIS assists the operator to indicate the options that are set by marking any other alarm conditions with OR: as soon as an alarm condition is selected in the Weather window.

#### **B.1.14 The timeline feature**



Timeline window provides a graphical representation of weather forecasts variation over time. The function is opened by pressing the Timeline button at the bottom of the Weather window.

- 1. To the left of the timeline window is the selection field, where you can select:
  - which weather data to be displayed
  - label (shape and color)
  - Weather data for current position of the cursor at the selected time
- 2. The date chosen for display in your chart is shown with a vertical yellow line in the timeline window.
- 3. By moving the cursor over the time window, the weather information that applies to the area that is directly under the cursor to the right of the selection field is displayed. Black color is used when weather data are from the graphs, and green is used when it's weather data from the cursor position on the chart that is displayed.

- 4. By default, it is assumed that the vessel starts on a route at the next full hour. Check this and adjust the departure time with the controllers Departure Rt.1 and Departure Rt.2 to correspond most to actually scheduled departure. It is only when the departure date is set as correct as possible, the weather routing provides a representative picture of what the vessel will experience of weather.
- 5. The settings made in the dropdown to how the timeline presented is:
  - Chart centre: a red cross with circle is set in the chart center to mark the exact point that the timeline shows data from
  - Ship pos: **Timeline** updated continuously as own ship position is changing
  - Cursor pos: Timeline updated continuously as the cursor is moved in the chart. If one of the mouse buttons are pressed, the timeline is locked to the cursor position and the dropdown menu selection changes to Chart centre
  - Route 1
  - Route 2

Pressing Ctrl + S keys simultaneously while the timeline is shown generates an image of the current graph that can be stored in the desired location.

- 6. Choose weather data to be displayed in the timeline by selecting the respective checkboxes in the selection field. In this field there are the following choices:
  - Pressure shows the graph of air pressure in the selected unit (mm Hg or hPa)
  - Temp shows the graph of temperature in the selected unit (Celsius, Fahrenheit or Kelvin)
  - Wind shows true wind speed in the selected unit (Knots, M/s (meters per second), mph (miles per hour) or Beaufort
  - Rain / Snow shows the graph of precipitation in the selected unit (Millimeters or Inches)
  - Swell Waves graph shows swell in the selected unit (Meters or Feet)
  - Total Waves graph shows the accumulated waves in the selected unit (Meters or Feet)
  - Alarm Zone visualizes guard zones in activated route. This is shown in color on the bottom of the x-axis:
    - If alarm conditions are breached it is displayed in red
    - If alarm conditions are kept it is displayed in green
    - When data is not available, it is displayed in gray

- (Rel.Dir): when selected, and the timeline is in Route mode, the directional arrows in the timeline graph changes to show the direction of the planned vessel course at the time. In the selection field the numerical value of the relative wind direction with true value of wind speed is displayed.
- (Periods): when selected wave period is also displayed along with wave graphs. Wave period is expressed in seconds(s).
- By pressing the Arrow button in the upper left corner of the selection box, the graph will expand to fill the entire weather window.
   Press the Arrow button again to go back to normal.

## **B.2** Radar overlay

TECDIS can be configured to show the RADAR overlay, elaborated by Furuno FAR-2107/2807 RADAR series. When RADAR overlay is enabled, it can be activated from the Main toolbar by clicking on thi**s ico**n or the F7 key.



Access to the configuration and settings of RADAR overlay is provided in the following way:

- 1. Press the Menu button
- 2. Select the Setup menu tab
- 3. Open the dropdown menu Chart Utilities
- 4. Select Radar overlay setup
- 5. A new Radar overlay correction window along with a sliding controller appear on the screen.

Chart utilities: Chart utilities: Chart library Manual chart update C-Map chart update Chart licenses INT-1 dictionary Radar overlay setup

#### **B.2.1** Radar overlay correction

In this window you can configure the radar overlay. You can set heading and range separately for each radar.

Rad	lar	٥١	/e	rla	y (	:01	'rı	ect	io	1									1	×
He	ad	lin	g	1	.6	0									R	ac	la	r [1	ľ	3
	1	1		1	1	1	1	1	1		,	Ļ	1		1	1	1	1		-
Ra	ING	le		1	38	M	_								-					
	T.	1	1	1	r.	1	•							7				1	1	

You can also select which of the connected radars is to be presented as radar 1. To do this, select the button 1 in the middle of the window, and in the radar selection box to the right of the window you select the desired radar.

### **B.2.2 Radar display slider control**

The display of the radar overlay is controlled by the slider in the lower left corner of the screen.

Here you can use the top controller to set the overlay colour. In S52 Chart Display Mode the color choices are light or dark green, while the INT1 Chart Display Mode is an extension module with multiple colors ranging from green (weak echo) to yellow (medium strong echo) to red (strong echo).

The lower slider controls the level of radar echoes transparency on a scale from 10 (relatively opaque) to 4 (relatively transparent).



## **B.3** Piracy Information

Valid only for TECDIS version 4.7.2.15 or later

TECDIS have the ability to download data about piracy activities directly to your chart for planning and navigation. Pirate Data is an additional service to the Jeppesen Professional + or Primar map.

When the subscription is established, pirate data will be included in chart updates. You establish your subscription by contacting Jeppesen. You will then receive an email with an attachment called password.usr.

This attachment must be stored on the TECDIS Service Key usb dongle so that it can be added to the system in TECDIS Setup.

#### **B.3.1** Activation of Pirate option

Activation is done as follows:

- Follow the procedure for entering license for Jeppesen as described in 6.5.2: Chart licenses - Jeppesen SENC(see page 172) Use Professional + or Primar as database when the procedure requires it. Select Add License From File.
- Perform a chart update of at least either the Jeppesen Professional
   + or the JeppesenPrimar database.

#### **B.3.2 Turn on display**



Now all available piracy data is available in TECDIS and ready for use. Viewing pirate data in the chart is started by:

- 1. Open the TECDIS menus.
- 2. Select te Chart tab

- 3. Click the Layers button
- 4. Tick for Piracy information in Supplementary Data folder for the desired chart database
- 5. Make the appropriate selections in the Piracy Information window for proper display of current pirate data, as described in the next section.

#### **B.3.3** Adjust the viewing of piracy data



In the Piracy Information window, it is possible to set criteria for the type of piracy data to show in the chart, and how the data is shown.

#### **Time Period**

The Time Period field contains three options for time-limiting the viewing of piracy data.

- The All choice is selected when all the data is to be displayed regardless of when the incident occurred.
- The choice Latest 12 weeks shows all cases in the last 12 weeks, or the number of weeks that is set with the up / down buttons to the right.
- The last option for the Time Period field allows to select all piratedata within a calendar month selected with the up / down buttons to the right.

#### **Incident types**

The Incident Types field and the associated Select None button has options for displaying these piracy data types:

- Hijack and Kidnap, indicated with a red symbol
- Armed robbery and Armed assault, indicated with an orange symbol
- Attempted attack and Attempted boarding, indicated with a blue symbol
- Theft and Suspicious approach, indicated with a green symbol

• All cases from last week are highlighted in black color, no matter piracy data type

By Clicking on a pirate symbol, a <u>red ring</u> is inserted around the piracy symbol and the Piracy Information window is extended with additional information about the selected symbol.



If several symbols are overlapping, the information

window will contain a tab per piracy symbol. When you select a tab in the information window, the chart will switch focus to the piracy symbol connected to that tab, and this is indicated with the red ring.



# **B.4** Autopilot (Track control)

TECDIS Track control has to be ordered as an optional feature, please contact Furuno Norway for more information.

TECDIS has autopilot functionality, and can automatically hold the vessel at a planned COG.

Track control will work under different circumstances and within the limits to vessel manoeuvrability. The autopilot functionality is connected to the vessels sources of position, course and speed information.

check with the autopilot manual for how to use and set up the auto pilot. TECDIS is approved with the following autopilots:

- Raytheon Anschütz AP2025 PLUS
- Emri SEM200/Furuno FAP-2000

#### **B.4.1 Autopilot mode**

When TECDIS is connected to an approved autopilot and Track Control is activated, the Track control information window will appear directly above the alarm field in the information panel.

AP mode:	Offline
Track	Heading

The possible values in the window are:

Offline	No data is received from the autopilot
Manual	The autopilot is in manual control mode
Heading ctrl	The autopilot is in course steer mode
ROT control	The autopilot is in Rate Of Turn control mode
Track Control	The autopilot is in Track Control control mode
External	The autopilot is now in External/Remote control mode and an autopilot remote control is displayed on the screen
Override	Check with the autopilot user manual

#### **B.4.2** Sensor surveillance and error tolerance

A TECDIS TCS (Track Control System) has to be connected to:

- two independent position sensors
- one course sensor
- one speed sensor

The data from these sensors are continuously monitored by the system and alarms will be triggered if data is lost or considered invalid. Positions and course data is compared and triggers alarms if the difference in course and position exceeds the limits specified in TECDIS Setup, see Appendix A.

If the sensor surveillance detects an error, or any other error in the TCS is detected, the TECDIS TCS will try to switch to heading control mode, with the parameter setting that in the best possible way keeps the vessel on the planned COG.

Values for Set Course and Set Rate Of Turn are sat to the values they were at the time TECDIS TCS was interrupted.

NB! If both course sensors report errors, or if the autopilot loses power, the rudder angle will not be affected. It will keep the same angle as it had at the time the error occurred.

The following events and alerts are displayed when TECDIS TCS is stopped by the autopilot:

Autopilot	TECDIS
The Track Con- trol Mode indic- ation light turns off	An alarm is started indicating Track Control Mode is off.
The Heading Control Mode indication light is turned on	The information field for Track Control changes to Heading ctrl or Offline if the autopilot com- munication is lost for more than 20 seconds.
The Track Con- trol Stopped Alarm is triggered	The Alarm Autopilot is started and the information field displays Offline.

### **B.4.3 TECDIS TCS operation**

When TECDIS TCS is in Track Control mode, it will work together with the autopilot to keep the vessel sailing on the planned route (relating to COG). Before each WP the following sequence is performed:

	Warning	Description	When
1.	Change Course early warning	This warning is enabled in TECDIS, 1 - 5 minutes before the course change (WOP), as configured in TECDIS Setup	1-5 min before WOL
2a.	Change Course LAST warning	If "Change Course early warning" (1) was confirmed by the oper- ator, this warning is enabled in TECDIS 30-60 seconds before the course change (WOP), as con- figured in TECDIS Setup	30-60 sek. before WOL
2b.	New WP	If "Change Course early warning" (1) was not confirmed by the operator, this alarm is activated in TECDIS 30-60 seconds before the course change (WOP), as configured in TECDIS Setup	30-60 sek. before WOL
3.	New WP	If "Change Course LAST warning" (2a) was not confirmed by the operator, this alarm is activated in the TECDIS at the weelover point(WOP)	At WOL
4.	The Turn (course changing) is performed At WOL		At WOL
5.	Back-up Nav- igator Alarm from the sep- arate alarm sys- tem	If "Change Course LAST warning" (2a) or "New WP" (3) was not con- firmed by the operator, a back-up Navigator Alarm will be activated on the separate alarm system.	30 sec after WOL

As long as the Track Control is active, the system will, at all times, continue to keep the vessel on the planned course over ground (COG), regardless of the alarms and warnings that have been acknowledge by operator.

### **B.4.4 Activating Heading Control mode**

The Heading button will set the autopilot in Heading Control Mode

AP mode: Heading ctrl Track Heading

#### **B.4.5** Activating Track Control mode

The Track button will initiate the Track Control mode, if the following conditions are met:

AP mode: Track control Track Heading

- A route must be selected and activated. The Track button is inactive if no route is selected and activated.
- •The distance from the vessel's position to the activated route leg must be within the distance limitations, specified by the 'Max lane deviation' parameter in TECDIS Setup.
- The difference between the vessel's course over ground and planned course must be less than the limit specified in TECDIS Setup for "Max course deviation"
- The vessel's speed must be greater than the one set in TECDIS Setup for "Min speed"

If any of these conditions are not met, the cause will be communicated to the operator.

If the distance from the position of the vessel to the route leg is greater than this limit, when the route is activated, TECDIS TCS will ask the operator to specify the first WP for route monitoring. When a WP is selected, TECDIS TCS will set up a temporary route leg from the vessel position to the starting point. This can be edited if needed.

### **B.4.6 External (Remote) mode**

When the autopilot is set to External (remote) mode, a dialog box is displayed in TECDIS, showing the current "Heading", "Set Course" and "Set RoT".

The current "Set Course" can be adjusted in three ways:

- by either turning, with the left mouse button, the wheel situated under "Set Course" displayed value
- or clicking the red or green arrow under the wheel
- or by using the mouse scroll wheel.

"Set RoT" can be adjusted by sliding the controller just below the display for "Set RoT", with the left mouse button pressed.



## **B.5** TECDIS keypad

This chapter explains the design, setup and usage of TECDIS Keypad.

It features system controlled indicator lights, and auto-dimmable backlit keys. The unit is protected at IP22 level, and has an expected lifetime of 200.000 operations per key.

### **B.5.1** The layout



### **B.5.2** Keys

STD	Set the chart presentation to S52 presentation
	Move chart view to own vessel position In numeric mode it is the number 8
	Chart panning – up In menus it has scroll functionality In numeric mode it is the number 5
€ I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I	Chart panning – down In menus it has scroll functionality In numeric mode it is the number 0
"←	Chart panning – left In numeric mode it is the number 7
<b>e</b>	Chart panning – right In numeric mode it is the number 9
	Chart panning – up-left In numeric mode it is the number 4
<b>BJ</b>	Chart panning – up-right In numeric mode it is the number 6
	Chart panning – down-left When an alarm sounds it switches to alarm acknowledge function
	Chart panning – down-right In numeric mode it is enter
1/K 7 K Y	Zoom in In numeric mode it is the number 1



#### Zoom out

In numeric mode it is the number 3



Set a Man Overboard symbol in the chart where the vessel is positioned. The system makes a bearing from the vessel to the MOB symbol. To turn off the bearing, click the MOB key again.



Activates Numeric Lock (NUM lock)

Single-click to toggle display of

TABL
TGT
1.01

- AIS targets(1st click)
  ARPA 1 targets(2nd click)
  ARPA 2 targets(3rd click)
- Double-click to view AIS list

In numeric mode it is a tabulator key (TAB)



Single-click to open the route selection tool Double-click to switch between activated route 1 and route 2



Double-click to open the position box tool

Single-click to open the Query cursor tool





Opens the bearing tool In numeric mode it is the number 2





#### User definable button



User definable button

## **B.5.3** Alarm functionality



When an alarm in TECDIS is activated, the LED light for the alarm acknowledge key will <u>blink continuously</u> until the alarm is viewed and approved, either with the trackball or with the alarm acknowledge key.

When you have acknowledged the alarms, but the alarm source is still active, the light will continuously shine.

# **B.5.4** Navigating your TECDIS with the keypad

These are the navigation key on the keypad, and they allow you to pan the chart in all directions (arrow keys), zoom in and out (zoom keys), and switch presentation to a different position (double click Query Cursor key) or to own vessel position (center key).



If you double click the query cursor key, then the Position dialoge window will open, and you can activate the numeric keys and enter a new position.

#### **B.5.5** Numeric mode



When you enter a tool or menu in TECDIS which requires insertion of numbers, you can change to numeric mode using the NUM key.

The LED lights for the numeric keys are ON as long as numeric mode is active. Pressing the NUM key again will deactivate numeric mode.

In numeric mode you also have backspace, TAB and enter keys available.

#### **B.5.5.1:** Alternative numerical functions

In TECDIS numeric keys have generic functions, which are available when you are not in a tool or menu that requires insertion of numbers.

These functions are as follows:

- 1. Toggle between the day-, dusk- and night monitor color modes
- 2. Toggle between display orientations (North, Radar, Head)
- 3. STD S52 AUTO presentation
- 4. USER presentation
- 5. Conning display
- 6. Weather display (option)
- 7. Radaroverlay (option)
- 8. EBL/VRM functions
- 9. ARPA
- 10. AIS

Enter: functions as left trackball button in the pointer's position

#### **B.5.6 User defined keys**

TECDIS Keypad has two user defined keys. These can be configured as shortcuts to often used functions, such as video-switching.

The keys are defined in the Setup menu tab, see chapter 7.2: (see page 186).

### **B.5.7 Video switching**

With TECDIS Keypad you can control video switching in TECDIS.

This allows you to temporarily change the monitor input of your TECDIS monitor, to the video signal you want. For example can ferries use the TECDIS monitor to display cameras used for docking, which is a situation where a camera feed is more important to safe sailing than the display of TECDIS and charts.



TECDIS will still be running, and give audible alarms when needed.

You can easily switch back to displaying the TECDIS system by pressing any key on the TECDIS Keypad, or a keyboard/trackball connected to the TECDIS system. The video feed is only connected to the monitor, and requires no additional software.

Video switching is configured in TECDIS Setup, see appendix A.4 (see page 227).

Video switching can also be turned on from the main toolbar. If Radar Overlay is configured, video switching is available on right click. If Radar Overlay is not configured, a VID button is shown instead.

## **B.6** Furuno RCU-018

If a Furuno RCU-018 control unit is connected to the TECDIS system then it can be used to control the chart system. The trackball can be used to move the cursor and general system navigation.



NB! Double clicking and drag-and-drop is not supported. The scroll wheel can be used to modify fields with up/down control, for example the fields for speed, corridor, radius and stop-time in the route planner. It can also be used to zoom in and out in the charts. Information on enabling scroll zoom can be found in the settings chapter.

RCU-018 has the following keys:

Кеу	Description	Func.
Power	Turns the chart system on/off. This button will not affect the monitor, which has to be shut of separately.	5109
VRM rotary encoder	Adjust the active VRM.	$\mathbf{S}$
VRM ON	Activates and displays VRM1 if not shown or if VRM2 is active. Activates and displays VRM2 if VRM1 is active.	$\mathbf{S}$
VRM OFF	Deactivates and removes VRM1 if both VRM's are	$\mathbf{S}$

	displayed.	
	Deactivates and removes VRM2 if VRM1 is active.	
EBL rotary encoder	Adjust the active EBL.	$\mathbf{S}$
EBL ON	Activates and displays EBL1 if not shown or if EBL2 is active. Activates and displays EBL2 if EBL1 is active.	$\overline{\diamond}$
EBL OFF	Deactivates and removes EBL1 if both EBL's are displayed. Deactivates and removes EBL2 if EBL1 is active.	
F1	Activated the userdefined function. F1 and F2 is defined in the setup menu tab, in the auxilary dropdown list.	
F2	Activated the userdefined function. F1 and F2 is defined in the setup menu tab, in the auxilary dropdown list.	
ALARM ACK	Acknowledges alarms generated by TECDIS.	
SYSTEM FAILURE	A red background light in button is visible, and an alarm sound is audible, when there is a system failure. Press ALARM ACK to silence the alarm sound. The button will appear in red until the cause of the problem is found and corrected.	
RADAR	Displays radar overlay and settings panel for radar overlay adjustment, colour and transparency.	
STD DSP	Standard display presentation (S52) for TECDIS.	STD
1/MARK	Brings up the symbols, lines and areas menu (mariner objects).	
2/ABC/ P BRILL	Toggles between day, dusk and night modes of display.	Dag 🗾
3/DEF/ MODE	Select presentation mode; north, course, heading, radar 1 and radar 2.	Nord
4/GHI/ OFF CNT	Center the chart view on the I VRM/EBL are present, center	atest selected VRM/EBL. If no the chart view on own ship.

1

-

5/JKL/ SCROLL	Show on-screen keypad for chart panning. If the button is pressed while the on-screen keypad for chart panning is active, the system activates Auto mode.	
6/MNO/ RECORD	Saves a time marker on the F9 key past track record.	
7/PQRS/ PLAN	Opens the route planning 1/	
8/TUV/ MONITOR	Show/hide conning screen.	
9/WXYZ/ NEXT	Same functionality as the Enter key on the supplied keyboard. Also emulates left mouse button for the cursor position.	
CANCEL/ SENSOR	Opens the NMEA data status window. Closes any open window.	
0/space CU/TU R	Recentre the chart view to own vessel position and activate Auto mode.	
SHIFT/ HELP	SHIFT: toggles between upper-case and lower-case letters. HELP: Shows object information about the object in the cursor position.	
MENU	Opens the settings menu.	
+RANGE-	Adjust the chart scale. ± keys	
МОВ	Places a MOB marker in the current position own vessel is and F10 in.	
EVENT	Saves an event marker in own vessel position.	
TARGET DATA	Show information for selected ARPA or AIS target.	
GAIN	GAIN Adjust transparency of readar overlay.	
A/C RAIN		
A/C SEA		

This blank page is automatically inserted where appropriate to ensure that new Chapters begin on a recto page.



# Frequently asked questions

In this section you will find procedures and answers to common questions. If there is a procedure you want us to add, please contact us at support@telko.no.

C.1Why isn't my route activated?	287
C.2The quickest way to make a route - quick route	288
C.3How do I keep my TECDIS units up to date	
C.4How do I turn on T&P and AIO	290
C.4.1ENC-integrated T&P notices	
C.4.2Jeppesen T&P	290
C.4.3Admiralty Information Overlay - AIO	291
C.4.4Manual chart corrections	292
C.5How do I activate Tides	293
C.6How to transfer system configuration	295

# **C.1** Why isn't my route activated?

The most common cause that a route is not activated, is that the TECDIS has been updated to a version that does not have the same options for route activation as the version you updated from.

You can activate you selected route in several ways, both automatically and manually. The activation method you choose should be affected by whether or not you can change the waypoint list or not.

This table provides an overview:

Automatic activation when inside the route corridor	For this to be possible the auto route activation has to be selected in the Safe menu tab
Manual activation when inside the route corridor	Is done by pressing the activate route but- ton on the route planner toolbar.
Automatic activation, with placing of additional waypoint creating a route leg from the vessel position to the first waypoint	For this to be possible the auto route activation has to be selected in the Safe menu tab, and Allow route activation entry lane has to be selected in TECDIS Setup.
Manual actiation, with placing of additional waypoint creating	For this to be possible Allow roTECDISute activation entry lane has to <b>be</b> select <i>ed in</i> Setup.
ition to the first waypoint	Is done by pressing the activate route button on the route planner toolbar.

## C.2 The quickest way to make a route - quick route

In TECDIS you can create and activate a route for sailing in only three steps

- 1. Start the Bearing tool from the main menu
- 2. Move the cursor to the point in the chart where you want to place the second waypoint, and left click the mouse.
- 3. Move the cursor to the point in the chart where you want to place the third (and last) waypoint, and right click the mouse.
- 4. Press OK in the message box that appears.

The quick route is now drawn, starting with waypoint 1 at the current position of own vessel. The route is activated, and route monitoring appears.

The quick route is a useful tool when you for example have to deviate from the planned voyage, but still want the route to be checked and you want route monitoring.
# **C.3** How do I keep my TECDIS units up to date

Regular chart updates is normally a set task for most navigators. What is often forgotten, is to also keep the TECDIS software updated.

TECDIS software comes in a new version roughly 3-4 times a year. By always keeping updated to the latest version, you are getting access to the latest features and bug fixes.

TECDIS is updated by downloading TECDISupdate.exe from http://telko.no/site/support. On the website we state when the update was released, and you will also find information about which changes have been made to the program, through:

- 1. TECDIS Feature Guide, released together with each new edition of the TECDIS program. Here the most important new and changed features are explained.
- 2. The changelog for TECDIS, which is updated with all changes made to the TECDIS program.

#### Latest Version (4.7.x.22)

Released 31. March 2014 (Release History)

(Released ST. March 2014 (Release History)		
Filename	Description	
TECDISUpdate.exe	Update an exisi	iting installation to the latest version.
TECDIS Feature Guide.pdf	NEW: Read about the changes and new features in the latest version of TECDIS.	
Previous Feature Guides		
Filename		Description
TECDIS Feature Guide 1	9.pdf	Feature guide for TECDIS version 4.7.x.19
TECDIS Feature Guide 1	B.pdf	Feature guide for TECDIS version 4.7.x.17
TECDIS Feature Guide 1	7.pdf	Feature guide for TECDIS version 4.7.x.17
TECDIS Feature Guide 1	. Capture screens	<sup>op</sup> eature guide for TECDIS version 4.7.x.16

It is also posiible to download previous Feature Guides, if you are updating from an even earlier version.

# C.4 How do I turn on T&P and AIO

T&P (temporary and preliminary notices) are an essential part of the work needed to keep charts updated for safe sailing. TECDIS has four methods for handling T&P notices:

- 1. ENC integrated notices
- 2. Jeppesen T&P
- 3. Admiralty Information Overlay AIO
- 4. Manual chart corrections

### C.4.1 ENC-integrated T&P notices

ENCintegrated T&P notices is offered by more and more hydrographic offices. This option integrates the T&P notices to the ENC charts, and every time you upgrade your charts the T&P notices are updates as well. The status of implementation for different flag states can be seen at https://www.primar.org/web/10180/60.

Even with ENCintegrated T&P notices, it is often wanted by inspectors that the navigator has a conscious relationship with Notices to Mariners and T&P in the charts. This is not possible with ENC-integrated T&P, as these are automatically controlled by the chart core of the system.

To display consciousness with regards to T&P, inspectors often require/expect navigators to use another method for handling chart corrections from Notice to Navigators.

# C.4.2 Jeppesen T&P

Jeppesen T&P is an optional service in TECDIS. To acquire Jeppesen T&P, contact Jeppesen Marine at info.marine@jeppesen.com.

Jeppesen T&P requires Jeppesen Professional+, Jeppesen ENC or JeppesenPrimar.

Jeppesen T&P display T&P notices in a separate datalayer in TECDIS. This datalayer can be switched on and off whenever wanted by the navigator. This is done in the following way:



## C.4.3 Admiralty Information Overlay - AIO

AIO is an optional service in TECDIS To acquire AIO, contact your AVCS dealer

AIO requires AVCS charts, and TECDIS AIO Update has to be installed.

AIO display T&P notices in a separate datalayer in TECDIS. This datalayer can be switched on and off whenever wanted by the navigator. This is done in the following way:



### C.4.4 Manual chart corrections

For more information about manual chart corrections, see 6.3.3: Manual chart corrections(see page 163).

# **C.5** How do I activate Tides

 The Jeppesen Tides service requires that either JeppesenPRIMAR or Jeppesen Professional+ is nstalled and activated on your TECDIS unit. Check this by opening the Setup menu and making sure that at least one of the chart databses is activated.



2. Tidal stations are placed in a separate information layer superimposed over the chart. This layer is activated in the Chart menu, by pressing the Layers button. Trykk på den.



3. Now the Layers window appear. Here you select the activated chart databasem and mark the box besides C\_MAP Tides.



 Jeppesen Tides is now activated and ready for use By pressing the Tide button on the information panel, now the tidal window will open and show the tidal information for the closest tidal station. Tidal stations are displayed in the chart as follows:



# **C.6** How to transfer system configuration

When you exchange or upgrade to a new TECDIS unit, you can transfer all system configurations and settings from the old unit to the new.

This is done in the following way:

- 1. Before the old unit is disassembled, insert the TECDIS Service Key in an available usb port.
- 2. Then start and stop the TECDIS Setup program once. When you do that, the system automatically generates a T-setup-xxxx.tsz file containg your configuration. The file is automatically placed on the TECDIS Service Key.
- 3. Remove the TECDIS Service Key from the old unit.
- 4. Disassemble the old TECDIS unit, and assemble the new TECDIS unit.
- 5. Insert the same TECDIS Service Key in the new unit.
- 6. Open TECDIS Setup, and go to the Specifications tab.
- 7. Press the restore saved default values button.



Your configuration has now been transferred to the new unit.

This minimizes the risk for errors, and makes changing computer unit an easy task.

Note: This will not transfer your routes/tracks and symbols to the new unit. That is done with the procedure described in chapter 7.5: *(see page 199)*, and using the function Copy out to file.

This blank page is automatically inserted where appropriate to ensure that new Chapters begin on a recto page.



# Troubleshooting

In this chapter you will find error codes and system warnings you may encounter in TECDIS. You will also find plausible causes and one or more solutions.

D.1Trobleshooting - general	
D.2Troubleshooting - connection issues	
D.2.1General tests	
D.2.2Connection tests for internet	
D.2.3Connection tests for email	
D.3Troubleshooting - S63 Chart Loader	
D.4Troubleshooting - Weather overlay	
D.4.1Connection errors	
D.4.2Error messages	

# **D.1** Trobleshooting - general

In this section you will find possible solutions for general issues in TECDIS.

Experienced issue	Cause	Solution
I can't activate the route	Route activation alternatives are not set up correctly.	For more information, see chapter <b>4.1.7 on page 75</b> .
My TECDIS cer- tificate has expired.	The TECDIS certificat installed. If new hard certificate has to be o	e (MED-B) only has to be valid until the unit is ware is installed (example: monitor), an updated downloaded from http://telko.no/site/support.
I can't access the Tides function.	Tides in TECDIS is a service by Jeppesen.	Install and <u>activate viewing of</u> the following chart databases: • Professional+ • JeppesenPrimar
Routes are not trans- ferred correctly from one TECDIS to the other.	Your route database	Contact us at support@tolko no for further
I get an error mes- sage when I try to save the route	might be corrupted.	instructions.
I can't save my past track	Your track database might be corrupted.	
I get the message "not official display" when I use INT1 chart view.	INT1 is not approved as the sole mode of presentation of charts.	If you have any doubts about the chart inform- ation you are viewing in INT1 mode, switch to S52 mode for confirmation. S52 is the only presentation method approved as standalone. You can still use other presentation modes as long as you have the option of switching back to S52 when you desire.
The AIS button on the main toolbar is greyed out/does not work	This requires that an add-on is:	a) contact your Furuno Norway dealer for purchase
The Radar button(s) on the main toolbar is greyed out/does not work	a. purchased b. activated	b) Check that your TECDIS license has the add- on(s) activated. See appendix <i>A.6 Licences</i> (see page 235)

The Weather Over- lay button on the main toolbar is greyed out/does not work		
AIS targets are dis- played with MMSI number and not their names.	TECDIS has not received the name of the vessel yet	Wait until the AIS transmitter on the targeted vessel has sent the vessel name. This will not take long.
I cannot place a MOB symbol in the chart	To place MOB symbo 0.5 knots.	Is the vessel has to travel at a speed lower than
I don't have access to the Replay func- tionality	The replay functional vessel speed has to b	ity requires that the vessel is not moving. The e lower than 0.5 knots.

# **D.2Troubleshooting - connection** issues

### **D.2.1General tests**

### A Check your subscription

Make sure your subscription hasn't expired.

#### Try another connection method

If you are using internet through the Furuno Network, try downloading by email. If you are already using email, try another email service. If you now get access, you have verified that the issue is with the network connection, and not the TECDIS system or the service you are using.

#### Try to update the TECDIS software

C Telko AS provide you with free software updates for your TECDIS. These contain both new functionality and big fixes. The issue you are experiencing might have been corrected in an update. Software updates are available at http://telko.no/site/support.

### **D.2.2Connection tests for internet**

#### Make sure the internet connection is activated

D Approved TECDIS installations configured with direct internet access must have on/of switch for internet.

#### Verify that you have access to the servers

- <u>http://distribution.c-map.no</u>
- <u>http://datacenter.c-map.no</u>
- <u>http://datacenter.jeppesen.com</u>

These are all opened in Internet Explorer.

Connection OK = The error is in your DNS settings

#### If E failed, you can connect to the servers with their IP addresses

http://80.239.21.75 F

Е

http://80.239.21.103

Connection OK = The error is in your DNS settings

G Of F failed, check that the firewall does not block you connection

## **D.2.3Connection tests for email**

	check that the answer man has not been placed in the spannolder
1	Try a lower max size for attachments (in the different function menus)
JI	Make sure you are not trying to send/load old files
К	Only update one unit at a time If both are updated at the same time it is easy to mix the files.

# D.3Troubleshooting - S63 Chart Loader

Each time the S63 Chart Loader is unable to load charts, an error message is displayed. The table below explains the different error messages.

Error message	Cause	Action
Format error loading installed cell permits	The saved Cell Permit files are not readable by the system.	Stop Chart S63 Loader, delete the file "C: \ Program Files \ TECIDS \ S63SYS \ PMT.DAT"
Failure to access cell permit storage	The saved Cell Permit files are not readable by the system.	and load all Cell Permits again.
No eToken detected	No TELKO eT (code plug) is connected to TECDIS or is defective.	Check that TELKO eT (code plug) is connected to the system and that a small red light is showing on it. Take it out of the usb port, and set it back in again. If this did not help, try another usb port. If this still does not help, contact a TECDIS servicepartner.
SSE 11 - Cell Permit file not found. Load the permit file provided by the data supplier.	During loading: The required Cell Permit file was not found or could not be loaded. Under erasure: The required Cell Permit file was not found or is already deleted.	During loading: Check that the file exists and is readable by copying it to a temporary location. Under erasure: Stop and restart Chart S63 Loader and check the Cell Permit list under the Licenses tab. If the Cell Permit which was deleted is still visible in the Cell Permit list, delete this file: "C: \ Program Files \ TECIDS \ S63SYS \ PMT.DAT" and download all the Cell Permits again.
SSE 11 - Cell Permit file contains no permits. Contact your data supplier and obtain a new permit file.	The specified Cell Permit file contains no Cell Permit	Contact the Cell Permit supplier and ask for a new Cell Permit file. Load the new Cell Permit when the file is received.
SSE 12 - Cell	During S63 startup: The saved Cell Permit has	During S63 startup: Stop Chart S63 Loader,

Permit format is incorrect. Contact your data supplier and obtain a new permit file.	<i>During loading:</i> The Cell Permit have errors or is incorrectly formatted.	During loading: Check that the file is actually a Cell Permit file. If this is confirmed, contact the Cell Permit supplier and ask for a new Cell Permit file.
SSE 13 - Cell Permit is invalid (checksum is incorrect). Contact your data supplier and obtain a new permit file.	During S63 startup: The saved Cell Permit has become unreadable. <i>During loading:</i> The Cell Permit have errors or is incorrectly formatted.	During S63 startup: Stop Chart S63 Loader, delete the file "C: \ Program Files \ TECIDS \ S63SYS \ PMT.DAT" and load all the Cell Permit again. During loading: Check that the file is actually a Cell Permit file. If this is confirmed, contact the Cell Permit supplier and ask for a new Cell Permit file.
SSE 14 - Incorrect system date, check that the computer clock (if accessible) is set correctly or contact your system supplier.	The system date has been reset.	Set the correct system date. If the problem persists, contact an authorized TECDIS service partner.
SSE 21 - Decryption failed no valid cell permit found. Permits may be for another system or new permits may be required, please contact your supplier to obtain a new licence. SSE 19 - Permits are not valid for	A S63 encrypted chart cell file is corrupted or incorrect and / or an outdated Cell Permit is in use. Cell Permit for one or	Obtain a valid Cell Permit from the chart supplier and enter them in the S63 Chart Loader. Try loading the charts again. If it is still not functional, contact your chart provider.
this system. Contact your data supplier to obtain the correct permits.	more S63 chart cells do not contain the correct decryption keys.	

SSE 15 - One or more ENC subscriptions in this cell permit file have expired. Please contact your data supplier to renew the subscription licence.	One or more of the Cell Permits have expired.	
SSE 15 - All ENC subscriptions for this ENC media have expired. Please contact your data supplier to renew the subscription licence.	All Cell Permits for ENC cells which are avail- able on chart media (CD-ROM, USB memory stick, etc.) are expired.	Obtain a valid Cell Permit from the chart supplier and enter them in the S63 Chart Loader.
SSE 15 - Subscription for this ENC has expired. Please contact your data supplier to renew the subscription licence.	Cell Permit for the specified chart cell is expired and ENC cell has not been loaded.	
WARNING: SSE 15 - One or more ENC subscriptions have expired. Contact your data supplier for a subscription renewal.	During S63 startup: One or more of the installed Cell Permits are expired. During loading: One or more of the Cell Permits have expired.	
WARNING: SSE 20 - One or more ENC subscriptions will expire in less than 30 days. Contact your	During S63 startup: One or more of the installed Cell Permits will expire in less than 30 days. During loading: One or	Obtain a valid Cell Permit from the chart supplier and enter them in the S63 Chart Loader.

data supplier for a subscription renewal.	more Cell Permits for ENC cells which are available on chart media (CD-ROM, USB memory stick, etc.) will expire in less than 30 days.	
SSE 20 - Subscription for this ENC will expire in less than 30 days. Please contact your data supplier to renew the subscription licence.	Cell Permit for the specified chart cell expires in less than 30 days.	
SSE 26 - This ENC is not authen- ticated by the IHO acting as the Scheme Admin- istrator.	The chart cell is signed by the chart supplier, but not by the IHO, as the S-63 standard requires.	Although the S-63 standard specifies that the chart cells should be signed by the IHO, in the current practice, this signature is done by the chart suppliers themselves. This message informs the user about this and should not be considered a failure.
Specified path does not contain valid S63 data	The specified location does not contain valid S-63 data.	Verify that the specified location contains an S- 63 data source.
This system does not support the S63 version of specified data	The S63 Chart Loader supports S63 data format version 1.0 and 2.0 of the S63 standard. The specified S63 data source uses a different version.	Contact the chart supplier to obtain S-63 chart media according to version 1.0 or 2.0 of the S- 63 standard.
This system does not support this cell permit version	The S63 Chart Loader supports S63 data format version 1.0 and 2.0 of the S63 standard. The specified Cell Permit file uses a different version.	Contact the chart supplier to obtain S-63 Cell Permit according to version 1.0 or 2.0 of the S- 63 standard.

SA digital certi- ficate has not yet been trusted	The IHO certificate is loaded, but is not verified for authen- ticity.	Inspect the certificate and confirm the authen- ticity accordi6.5.3: Certificate for chart providers
Certificate has not yet been trusted	A certificate is loaded, but is not verified for authenticity.	(see page 173)Map Update (ENC Update CD).

# D.4Troubleshooting - Weather overlay

This chapter provides some guidelines for troubleshooting connection errors for the weather overlay, and contains a list of error messages and descriptions of their cause and/or solution.

### **D.4.1Connection errors**

For any problems occurring during the download of weather data, regardless of the connection type used, TECDIS service partner and / or Jeppesen Marine will be able to provide very useful assistance in tracking down the cause of weather download problems.

Jeppesen Marine's servers have logs that show whether the weather download attempts actually achieved contact with Jeppesen Marine's servers or if the weather download procedure was successful. They will also be able to confirm whether the subscription is intact.

In order to provide help and assistance, regarding TECDIS system or chart - weather databases, Jeppesen Marine or your chart supplier, will need your System ID / TELKO eT number.

Make sure your subscription is valid. The expiration date can be viewed in the weather window by pressing: Data, New Download, and Show Subscription buttons.

### D.4.2Error messages

The following list displays some of the error messages that can be experienced in the weather overlay functionality.

Error message	Description
Current weather data lacks parameters set in active alarm conditions. Review alarm settings.	This is not an error. It is simply an indication that the currently loaded Weather data file does not contain all of the weather parameters you have specified in your selected alarm condi- tions.
No current weather forecasts are available.	This is not an error. It is simply an indication that you have no current Weather data files on the system.
No cyclones in effect at last download.	This is not an error. It is a message to inform you that the Cyclone presentation is not available because there are no cyclones at this time.
Communication Error	There was a problem during the Weather data download.
You must be in show checkbox mode to set this date	This message is due to a known error. Update TECDIS software to the latest version
ERROR: Weather components	There is a problem with C-Map System files in the installation.

are not initialized	Contact TECDIS service support for assistance.
Weather Data Error: The internal component processing the weather data cannot be created.	There is a problem with C-Map System files in the installation. Contact TECDIS service support for assistance.
Cyclone Data Error: The internal component processing the weather data cannot be created.	There is a problem with C-Map System files in the installation. Contact TECDIS service support for assistance.
Weather Data Error: License interface cannot be obtained.	There is a problem with C-Map System files in the installation or with the license in the "System ID / TELKO eT"( codeplug). Contact TECDIS support for assistance.
Cyclone Data Error: License interface cannot be obtained.	There is a problem with C-Map System files in the installation or with the license in the "System ID / TELKO eT"( codeplug). Contact TECDIS support for assistance.
Weather Data Error: File is not found.	The Weather data file is missing from the system.
Weather Data Error: Corrupted or wrong format file.	The Weather data file has become corrupted or is not provided by Jeppesen Marine.
Weather Data Error: The file data cannot be accessed.	The system cannot access the Weather data file.
Weather Data Error: Problems with weather data licensing.	The Weather data file does not appear to be licensed to this system.
Cyclone Data Error: File is not found.	The Cyclone data file is missing from the system.
Weather Data Error: Corrupted or wrong format file.	The Cyclone data file has become corrupted or is not provided by Jeppesen Marine.
Cyclone Data Error: Wrong format of cyclones data.	The Cyclone data file has become corrupted or is not provided by Jeppesen Marine.
Cyclone Data Error: Wrong point values in cyclones.	The Cyclone data file has become corrupted or is not provided by Jeppesen Marine.
Cyclone Data Error: The file data cannot be accessed.	The system can not access the Cyclone data file.
Cyclone Data Error: Problems with weather data licensing.	The Cyclone data file does not appear to be licensed to this system.
The specified file did not have a .grb or .xml extension.	The Import feature can only load files with a *.grb or *.xml file extension. Import of a file with another extension was

attempted.



# Furuno Norway

Furuno Norway is the worldwide distributor of TECDIS.

### Head Office, Aalesund

Furuno Norge AS

Visitor address/ shipment address: Sjømannsveien 19 N-6008 Aalesund Postal address: Servicebox 11 N-6025 Aalesund Telephone: +47 70 10 29 50 <u>Telefax: +47 70 10 29 51</u> Branch Office, Deep Sea Furuno Norge AS

Visitor address/ shipment address:
Øvre Fyllingsvei 81
N-5162 Laksevåg
Postal address:
Øvre Fyllingsvei 81
N-5162 Laksevåg
Telephone: +47 55 94 41 41
Telefax: +47 55 94 41 51

E-mail: furuno@furuno.no Website: www.furuno.no

#### Service Phone: +47 99216950

Our service telephone is served when offices are closed